

EducT  
318  
71.448.10

## CLASSICAL WORKS.

### LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

**Harkness's Introductory Latin Book**, intended as an Elementary Drill-Book on the Inflections and Principles of the Language.

— **Latin Grammar**, for Schools and Colleges. Revised Edition

— **Elements of Latin Grammar**, for Schools.

— **Latin Reader**, with References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary.

— **Practical Introduction to Latin Composition**, for Schools and Colleges. Part I. Elementary Exercises, intended as a Companion to the Reader. Part II. Latin Syntax. Part III. Elements of Latin Style, with special Reference to Idioms and Synonymes. (Just published.)

— **Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War**, with Notes, Dictionary, Life of Cæsar, Map of Gaul, Plans of Battles, etc.

— **Cicero's Select Orations**, with Notes, etc.

**Arnold's First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar.**\* Revised and corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 359 pages.

— **Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition.**\* Revised and corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 356 pages.

**Cornelius Nepos**,\* with Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a **Lexicon**, Historical and Geographical Index, etc. 12mo. 350 pages.

**Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament.** 12mo. 291 pages.

**Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War.** With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a **Lexicon**, Geographical and Historical Indexes, and a Map of Gaul. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 408 pages.

**Cicero's Select Orations.** With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.

**Cicero de Officiis.** With English Notes, mostly translated from Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 194 pages.

PROF. HARKNESS'S SERIES  
OF  
LATIN AND GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.\*

---

**AN INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK**, INTENDED AS AN ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK on the Inflections and Principles of the Language. Price, \$1.25.

**A LATIN GRAMMAR**, FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. Revised Edition. 12mo. Price, \$1.75.

**THE ELEMENTS OF LATIN GRAMMAR**, FOR SCHOOLS.

**A LATIN READER**. With References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary. Price, \$1.50.

**A PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN COMPOSITION**. FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. Part I. Elementary Exercises, intended as a Companion to the Reader. Part II. Latin Syntax. Part III. Elements of Latin Style, with Special Reference to Idioms and Synonymes. (Just published.) Price, \$1.50.

**CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR**. With Notes, Dictionary, etc. (*In press.*)

**CICERO'S SELECT ORATIONS**. With Notes, etc. (*In preparation.*)

**A FIRST GREEK BOOK**, COMPRISING AN OUTLINE OF GRAMMAR and an INTRODUCTORY READER. Price, \$1.75.

This series has received the unqualified commendation of many of the most eminent classical professors and teachers in our country, and is already in use in every State of the Union, and, indeed, in nearly all our leading classical institutions of every grade, both of school and college. Each volume, as it has issued from the press, has been received with a degree of enthusiasm unsurpassed in our experience with text-books. The publication of the series marks, it is believed, an era in the classical education of our country. We ask the attention of teachers to these works, in the conviction that they furnish a better course of elementary classical instruction than can elsewhere be found in our language.

The Latin Text-Books in this series may be arranged in three distinct courses, adapted to the wants of different schools.

---

\* The present series, it will be observed, dispenses with the use of the author's *First* and *Second Latin Books*, published many years ago.

## FIRST, OR FULL COURSE.

### 1. Introductory Latin Book.

This volume, as the name implies, is introductory to the entire series. It is intended to be placed in the hands of every beginner in Latin, and aims to furnish him the very knowledge which he especially needs to enable him to start aright in his course. All the grammatical portions of the work are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar, to which it is introductory.

### 2. Grammar, Reader, and Latin Composition.

These three works are intended to be commenced in concert. The first will accompany the student throughout his whole course of Latin study; the second is introductory to Latin authors; while the third furnishes a progressive series of exercises in writing Latin, so prepared as to run parallel with the usual course of reading in that language.

### 3. Cæsar, Grammar and Latin Composition continued.

### 4. Cicero, Grammar and Latin Composition continued.

The full course is intended for all those who are preparing for college, or who hope to make any considerable proficiency in the Latin language and literature. It may, however, be varied by the substitution of the author's Elements of Latin Grammar in place of the Grammar itself, in those schools where, for any reason, a small manual is thought desirable.

## SECOND COURSE.

### 1. Grammar, Reader, Latin Composition.

### 2. Cæsar, Grammar and Latin Composition continued.

### 3. Cicero, Grammar and Latin Composition continued.

This course is the same as the first, with the omission of the Introductory Latin Book, and is intended only for those who are compelled to limit themselves to a short preparatory course. Indeed, even in such cases, the author believes that a term or two spent on the Introductory Book, would in the end not only promote accuracy of scholarship, but actually save time. This course may also be varied by the substitution of the Elements of Latin Grammar in place of the Grammar itself.

## THIRD COURSE.

### 1. Introductory Latin Book.

### 2. Elements of Latin Grammar, Reader.

### 3. Cæsar, Elements continued.

This short course is intended only for those who, unable to do more than to master the general principles of the language, yet desire to prepare themselves by this means to appreciate the idioms and etymology of their own language.

**Wm. F. Wyers**, Princ. Academy, Westchester, Pa.: "It is, I think, in many vital points superior to any and all Latin Grammars at present in use in the schools and colleges of this country."—**Rev. M. B. Anderson**, LL. D., Pres. University of Rochester, N. Y.: "In my judgment, this is the best Latin Grammar accessible to the American student."—**Rev. Prof. A. Hovey**, D. D., Theological Seminary, Newton, Mass.: "It is, I think, by far the best manual of Latin Grammar in our language. It is a model book, clear, concise, correct, and philosophical."

**Prof. C. A. Aikin**, Princeton College, N. J.: "I am very much

pleased with Harkness's Latin Grammar."—**Prof. J. F. Spence**, Institute, Knoxville, Tenn.: "It is the best work of the kind I have ever examined."—**Prof. A. J. Thompson**, Abingdon College, Ill.: "I think Harkness's Grammar decidedly the best I have seen."

**Prof. S. B. Kieffer**, Heidelberg College, Tiffin, Ohio: "I find it decidedly superior to any grammar with which I have yet become acquainted."—**Rev. Dr. A. D. Sandborn**, Pres. Northwestern College: "I seldom recommend any book, but I must say of Harkness's Latin Grammar, that I never saw its equal."

### LATIN READER.

**Prof. A. S. Packard**, Bowdoin College, Maine: "This is an excellent introductory book."—**S. P. Bates**, Dep. Supt. Pub. Schools, Pa.: "This work is a marvel of excellence. It enunciates the true principles of the science of translation."—**Prof. F. Carter**, Williams College, Mass.: "I rejoice that there is at last published in our country a series of Latin works really adapted to the wants of beginners."

**Prof. M. B. Brown**, S. S. C., Notre Dame Univ., Ind.: "I consider it a most valuable text-book, eminently calculated to promote education in the highest sense of the term."—**A. P. Stone**, High School, Portland, Maine: "It is the very best manual for elementary instruction in Latin with which I am acquainted."—**Prof. O. L. Castle**, Shurtleff College, Ill.: "It is a truly admirable work, just what I have desired."

**Prof. Oscar Howes**, Shurtleff College, Ill.: "Harkness's Latin Grammar, indisputably superior to all others, is rendered even more serviceable by this fitting companion."—**Professor Jas. Mudge**, Pennington College, N. J.: "The Grammar and Reader are both far superior to any thing previously produced."

**Prof. W. W. Goodwin**, Harvard University: "It seems to me a most valuable work."—**C. V. Spear**, Institute, Pittsfield, Mass.: "The Grammar and Reader furnish a better introduction to the Latin than can elsewhere be found in our language."

**B. R. McKoon**, Seminary, Whites-town, N. Y.: "I say most heartily and unhesitatingly that Harkness's Reader is the best I have ever seen."—**Prof. J. R. Boise**, University of Chicago: "I think it just such a book as I should like to use with a class of beginners in Latin."

## INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

**Wm. F. Wyers**, Academy, West Chester, Pa.: "This is a most valuable Introduction to the distinguished author's other Latin works. The author's Latin Grammar, Latin Reader, and First Greek Book, are the text-books in my school."—**Prof. O. Howes**, Shurtleff College, Ill.: "This is undoubtedly the best book of its kind to be found in our language."—**S. M. Capron**, Latin School, Hartford, Conn.: "With such text-books in his hand, the scholar may easily grow enthusiastic in the study of the Latin."

**A. H. Buck**, late Princ. Latin School, Roxbury, Mass.: "Like the author's Grammar, this is the only work of its kind which we Americans can afford to use."—**Prof. W. A. Stevens**, Denison

University, O.: "It is just the book that is needed."—**Rev. D. Leach**, Supt. Public Schools, Prov., R. I.: "It is just the book needed to meet the wants of beginners in Latin. It cannot be too highly commended."

**E. R. Adams**, Academy, East Bloomfield, N. J.: "I can say plainly, and without reservation, that it is the best work for beginners in Latin that I have ever seen."—**Pres. A. D. Sandborn**, Northwestern College, Minn.: "It is a gem of a book, and contains just what the beginner needs to learn. We have adopted Harkness's Classical Course."—**E. D. Hovey**, Princ. Rome Academy, Rome, N. Y.: "I am highly delighted with it. Now I have a genuine progressive Latin course."

## FIRST GREEK BOOK.

**Rev. B. Sears, D. D., LL. D.**, late Pres. Brown University: "This is an admirable work, both in plan and execution."—**C. C. Felton, LL. D.**, late Pres. Harvard University: "I was so much pleased with the work, that I read nearly every word. I think the plan admirable."

**Prof. J. Hadley**, Yale College: "It will be found highly serviceable in the work of elementary instruction."—**Prof. E. S. Gregory**, Reserve College, Ohio: "I think it the best book for beginners I ever saw."

**H. S. Taylor, LL. D.**, Princ. Phillips's Academy, Andover, Mass.: "It will be found an unusually attractive book for those beginning Greek."—**Prof. G. R. Bliss**, Lewisburg University: "I have seen no book which is

sulted to facilitate so complete a knowledge of the subject in so short a time and in so pleasant a manner."

**Rev. Dr. John J. Owen**, New York College: "It cannot well fail of being a favorite book in our academies and classical schools."—**Prof. W. S. Tyler**, Amherst College: "The Syntax is remarkably perspicuous in its analysis of sentences and its deduction of rules."

**Prof. T. Chase**, Haverford College: "This is an admirable work, and a great improvement on our previous text-books."—**Rev. Austin Phelps, D. D.**, Pres. Andover Theol. Seminary: "I am much pleased with it. It seems to me distinguished for its clear statements and its simple and scholarly arrangements."



3 2044 097 054 928

66

*STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.*

**Horace, The Works of.** With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.

**Livy.** Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.

**Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great.** Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 335 pages.

**Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.** With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGIS. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

**The Histories of Tacitus.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.

**Tacitus's Germania and Agricola.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.

**Virgil's Æneid.\*** With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

**GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.**

**A First Greek Book\* and Introductory Reader.** By A. HARNESSE, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book," "Second Latin Book," etc. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

**Acts of the Apostles,** according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D. With Map. 12mo.

**Arnold's First Greek Book,\*** on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

**Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.\*** 12mo. 297 pages.

——— **Second Part to the above.\*** 12mo. 248 pages.

 SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.





L. P. Bachelder



0

AN

INTRODUCTORY

L A T I N B O O K,

INTENDED AS AN

ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,

ON THE

INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,

AND AS AN

INTRODUCTION

TO THE

AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS,

*Professor in Brown University.*

AUTHOR OF "A LATIN GRAMMAR," "A LATIN READER," "A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

90, 92 & 94 GRAND STREET.

1871.

Educ T 918.71.448.10

✓



Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1866, by  
ALBERT HARKNESS,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Rhode Island.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin. As an Elementary Drill-book, it aims to supply a want long felt in our schools. In no stage of a course of classical study is judicious instruction of more vital importance than in that which deals with the forms and elements of the Latin language. To the beginner, every thing is new, and requires minute and careful illustration. He must at the very outset become so familiar with all the grammatical inflections, with their exact form and force, that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur. He must not lose time in uncertain conjecture, where positive knowledge alone will be of any real value. Improvement on this point is one of the pressing needs of our schools. This volume is intended as a contribution to classical education in aid of this particular work. It aims to lighten the burden of the teacher in elementary drill, and to aid him in grounding his pupils in the first elements of the Latin language.

It is the unmistakable verdict of the class-room, that theory and practice must not be separated in the study of language. The true method of instruction will make ample provision for both. On the one hand, the pupil must, by a vigorous use of the memory, become master of all the grammatical forms and rules; while, on the other hand, he must not be denied the luxury of using the knowledge which he is so laboriously acquiring.

To this just and urgent demand of the class-room, the

author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since, on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, owed its origin. For the favor with which it was received, and for the generous interest with which it has so long been regarded, the author desires here to express his sincere thanks to the numerous classical instructors whose fidelity in its use has contributed so largely to its success. In the conviction, however, that it has now done its appointed work, he begs leave to offer them the present volume as its successor.

The great objection to most First Latin Books, that, however excellent they may be in themselves, they are not especially adapted to any particular Grammar, and that they accordingly fill the memory of the pupil with rules and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume. All the grammatical portions of it, even to the numbering of the articles, are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Indeed, the paradigms are not only the same as in the Grammar, but also occupy the same place on the page; so that even the local associations which the beginner so readily forms with the pages of his first book may be transferred directly to the Grammar.

This work is intended to be complete in itself. It comprises a distinct outline of Latin Grammar, Exercises for Double Translation, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes and Vocabularies. As an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader and Latin Composition, it discusses and illustrates precisely those points which are deemed most essential as a preparation for the course of study presented in those works.

PROVIDENCE, R.I., June, 1866.

# C O N T E N T S.

## PART FIRST.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet . . . . .	1
Sounds of Letters . . . . .	2
Exercise I. . . . .	3
"    II. . . . .	4
"    III. . . . .	5
Syllables . . . . .	6
Quantity . . . . .	6
Accentuation . . . . .	7
Exercise IV. . . . .	7

## PART SECOND.

### ETYMOLOGY.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### NOUNS.

Gender . . . . .	8
Person and Number . . . . .	9
Cases . . . . .	9
Declensions . . . . .	10
First Declension . . . . .	11
Exercise V. . . . .	11
Second Declension . . . . .	13
Exercise VI. . . . .	14
"    VII. . . . .	16
Third Declension . . . . .	17
Exercise VIII. . . . .	23
"    IX. . . . .	25
Fourth Declension . . . . .	26
Exercise X. . . . .	27

	Page.
Fifth Declension . . . . .	28
Exercise XI. . . . .	29

## CHAPTER II.

### ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions . . . . .	30
Exercise XII. . . . .	33
Third Declension . . . . .	35
Exercise XIII. . . . .	37
Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	38
Exercise XIV. . . . .	39
Numeral Adjectives . . . . .	40
Exercise XV. . . . .	42

## CHAPTER III.

### PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns . . . . .	43
Possessive . . . . .	44
Demonstrative . . . . .	44
Relative . . . . .	45
Interrogative . . . . .	46
Indefinite . . . . .	46
Exercise XVI. . . . .	47

## CHAPTER IV.

### VERBS.

Voices . . . . .	48
Moods . . . . .	49
Tenses . . . . .	50
Numbers . . . . .	50
Persons . . . . .	51
Conjugation . . . . .	51
The Verb Sum . . . . .	52
Exercise XVII. . . . .	56
" XVIII. . . . .	57
" XIX. . . . .	60
First Conjugation . . . . .	62
Exercise XX. . . . .	66



	Page.
Exercise XXI. . . . .	67
“ XXII. . . . .	69
“ XXIII. . . . .	71
“ XXIV. . . . .	73
“ XXV. . . . .	74
“ XXVI. . . . .	75
“ XXVII. . . . .	76
Second Conjugation . . . . .	78
Exercise XXVIII. . . . .	82
“ XXIX. . . . .	83
“ XXX. . . . .	84
“ XXXI. . . . .	85
“ XXXII. . . . .	86
“ XXXIII. . . . .	87
“ XXXIV. . . . .	88
Third Conjugation . . . . .	90
Exercise XXXV. . . . .	94
“ XXXVI. . . . .	95
“ XXXVII. . . . .	96
“ XXXVIII. . . . .	97
“ XXXIX. . . . .	97
“ XL. . . . .	98
“ XLI. . . . .	99
Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	100
Exercise XLII. . . . .	104
“ XLIII. . . . .	104
“ XLIV. . . . .	105
“ XLV. . . . .	106
“ XLVI. . . . .	107
“ XLVII. . . . .	107
“ XLVIII. . . . .	108
Verbs in 10 . . . . .	110
Exercise XLIX. . . . .	112

## PART THIRD.

### SYNTAX.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.	
I. Classification of Sentences . . . . .	114
II. Simple Sentences . . . . .	115

## CHAPTER II.

## SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

Section.		Page.
I.	Agreement of Nouns . . . . .	117
	Exercise L. . . . .	117
	“ LI. . . . .	119
II.	Nominative . . . . .	120
	Exercise LII. . . . .	120
III.	Vocative . . . . .	121
	Exercise LIII. . . . .	121
IV.	Accusative . . . . .	122
	Exercise LIV. . . . .	123
	“ LV. . . . .	124
	“ LVI. . . . .	125
V.	Dative . . . . .	126
	Exercise LVII. . . . .	127
	“ LVIII. . . . .	129
VI.	Genitive . . . . .	130
	Exercise LIX. . . . .	131
	“ LX. . . . .	132
VII.	Ablative . . . . .	133
	Exercise LXI. . . . .	135
	“ LXII. . . . .	137
	“ LXIII. . . . .	138
	“ LXIV. . . . .	140
VIII.	Cases with Prepositions . . . . .	141
	Exercise LXV. . . . .	142
	Suggestions to the Learner . . . . .	143
	Latin-English Vocabulary . . . . .	147
	English-Latin Vocabulary . . . . .	157

## EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

---

THE numerals refer to articles in this work.

The following abbreviations occur:

abl. . . . .	ablative.	n. . . . .	neuter.
acc. . . . .	accusative.	nom. . . . .	nominative.
act. . . . .	active.	p. . . . .	page.
adv. . . . .	adverb.	part. . . . .	particle.
conj. . . . .	conjunction.	pass. . . . .	passive.
dat. . . . .	dative.	pers. . . . .	person.
f. . . . .	feminine.	plur., or pl. . . . .	plural.
gen. . . . .	genitive.	prep. . . . .	preposition.
indef. . . . .	indefinite.	rel. . . . .	relative.
interrog. . . . .	interrogative.	sing. . . . .	singular.
m. . . . .	masculine.	voc. . . . .	vocative.



# INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

---

1. **LATIN GRAMMAR** treats of the principles of the Latin language.

---

## PART FIRST.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.<sup>1</sup>

---

#### ALPHABET.

2. **THE** Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. **Classes of Letters.**—Letters are divided into two classes :

- |                                     |           |                   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| I. <i>Vowels</i>                    | . . . . . | a, e, i, o, u, y. |
| II. <i>Consonants</i> :—            |           |                   |
| 1. <i>Liquids</i>                   | . . . . . | l, m, n, r.       |
| 2. <i>Spirants</i>                  | . . . . . | h, s.             |
| 3. <i>Mutes</i> : 1) <i>Labials</i> | . . . . . | p, b, f, v.       |
| 2) <i>Palatals</i>                  | . . . . . | c, g, k, q, j.    |
| 3) <i>Linguals</i>                  | . . . . . | t, d.             |
| 4. <i>Double Consonants</i>         | . . . . . | x, z.             |

4. **Combinations of Letters.**—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*,—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are *ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*,—*x* = *cs* or *gs* ; *z* = *ds* or *ts*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th*, are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

---

<sup>1</sup> Orthography treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

## SOUNDS OF LETTERS.

5. Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, two distinct systems are recognized, generally known as the *English* and the *Continental Method*.<sup>1</sup> For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

## I. ENGLISH METHOD.

1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

6. Vowels generally have their *long* or *short* English sounds.

7. **Long Sound.**—Vowels have their long English sounds—*a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel:<sup>2</sup> *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mil'-sy*.

2. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.<sup>3</sup>

3. In penultimate<sup>4</sup> and unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*, *do-lo'-ris*. But

1) *A unaccented* has the sound of a *final* in *America*: *men'-sa*.

8. **Short Sound.**—Vowels have the short English sound—*a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth*—in the following situations:

<sup>1</sup> Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

<sup>2</sup> Some give to *i* in both syllables of *tibi* and *sibi* the short sound.

<sup>3</sup> In these rules, no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel: for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

<sup>4</sup> Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys*; except *post*, *es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex'-e'-runt*, *bel'-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables before one or more consonants, except the penultimate: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But

1) *A*, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

## 2. Sounds of Diphthongs.

9. *Æ* and *œ* are pronounced like *e*:

1) long: *Cae'-sar* (*Ce'-sar*), *Oe'-ta* (*E'-ta*).

2) short: *Daed'-ă-lus* (*Ded'-a-lus*), *Oed'-i-pus*.

*Au* as in author: *au'-rum*.

*Eu* . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.<sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISE I.

Give the sounds of the Vowels and Diphthongs in the following words.

1. Men'-sam,<sup>2</sup> men'-sas, men'-sis, men'-sae,<sup>3</sup> men-sa'-rum.<sup>4</sup>
2. Ho'-ram,<sup>5</sup> ho'-ras, ho'-ris, ho'-rae,<sup>6</sup> ho-ra'-rum.<sup>7</sup> 3. Scho'-la,<sup>8</sup> scho'-lam, scho'-las, scho'-lis, scho'-lae, scho-la'-rum.
4. Co-ro'-na,<sup>8</sup> co-ro'-nam, co-ro'-nas, co-ro'-nis, co-ro'-nae.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs; but, when so used, they have the long sound of *i*: *hei*, *cui*.

<sup>2</sup> 8, 2; 8, 1.

<sup>3</sup> 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>4</sup> 7, 3; 7, 3, 1).

<sup>5</sup> 8, 2; 9; 7, 1.

<sup>6</sup> 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

<sup>7</sup> 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

<sup>8</sup> 8, 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>9</sup> 7, 3; 8, 1.

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English; but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C, G, S, T, and X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. *C* and *g* are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e, i, y, æ,* and *oe*; and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (sedo), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-na*, *a'-ge* (a-je), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (ka'do), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*.

2. *S* generally has its regular English sound as in *son*, thus: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *si'-dus*. But

1) *S* final after *e, æ, au, b, m, n, r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

3. *T* has its regular English sound as in *time*: *ti'-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound like *ks*: *rex'-i* (rek'-si), *ux'-or* (uk'-sor).

12. **C, S, T, and X — Aspirated.** — Before *i*, preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c, s, t*, and *x* are aspirated, — *c, s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us), *Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um); *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo*, preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-e-on).

13. **Silent Consonants.** — An initial consonant, with or without the aspirate *h*, is sometimes silent: *Cne'-us* (Ne'-us).

## EXERCISE II.

*Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words.*

1. *Ci'-vis*,<sup>1</sup> *civ'-i-um*, *civ'-i-bus*. 2. *Car'-men*,<sup>2</sup> *car'-mi-nis*, *car'-mi-ne*.<sup>3</sup> 3. *Rex*,<sup>4</sup> *re'-gis*,<sup>5</sup> *re'-gi*, *re'-gum*.<sup>6</sup> 4. *Ca'-put*,<sup>7</sup> *cap'-i-tis*, *cap'-i-tum*. 5. *A'-ci-em*,<sup>8</sup> *a'-ci-e*, *a'-ci-es*.<sup>9</sup> 6. *Ars*,<sup>8</sup> *ar'-tis*, *ar'-tes*,<sup>8</sup> *ar'-ti-um*.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 11, 1 and 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>2</sup> 11, 1; 8, 2; 8, 1.

<sup>3</sup> 8, 3; 7, 3; 7, 1.

<sup>4</sup> 11, 4.

<sup>5</sup> 11, 1; 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>6</sup> 11, 1, and 3.

<sup>7</sup> 8, 3, 1; 12; 8, 1.

<sup>8</sup> 11, 2, 1).

<sup>9</sup> 12.



## II. CONTINENTAL METHOD.<sup>1</sup>

### 1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

14. Each vowel has in the main one uniform sound;<sup>2</sup> but the length or duration of the sound depends upon the quantity of the vowel. See 20.

The vowel-sounds are as follows :

a	like	ä	in	father :	e.g.,	a'-ra.
e	"	ā	made :	"		plé-bes.
i	"	ē	me :	"		i'-ri.
o	"	ō	no :	"		o'-ro.
u	"	û	do :	"		u'-num.
y	"	ē	me ;	"		Ny'-sa.

### 2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

15. *Ae* and *oe* like *a* in *made* : e.g., *ae'-tas*, *oe'-lum*.

*au* " *ou* " *out* : " *au'-rum*.<sup>3</sup>

### 3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

16. The pronunciation of the consonants is similar to that of the English method ; but it varies somewhat in different countries.

## EXERCISE III.

*Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words, according to the Continental Method.*

1. Hō'-ră, hō'-răm, hō'-rās, hō'-rīs, hō'-rae, hō-ră'-rüm.
2. Glō'-rĭ-ă, glō'-rĭ-ăm, glō'-rĭ-ae.    3. Dō'-nŭm, dō'-nĭ, dō'-

<sup>1</sup> If the *English Method* is adopted as the standard in the school, this outline of the *Continental Method* should be omitted.

<sup>2</sup> These sounds sometimes undergo slight modifications in uniting with the various consonants.

<sup>3</sup> In other combinations, the two vowels are generally pronounced separately ; but *ei* and *eu* occur as diphthongs, with nearly the same sound as in English.

nō, dō'-nā, dō-nō'-rūm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vīs, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm, cī'-vēs, cīv'-ī-ūm, cīv'-ī-būs.

### SYLLABLES.

17. In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade* are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel-sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus: *mo'-re*, *vi'-ce*, *a-cu'-te*, *per-sua'-de*.

### QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are, in quantity or length, either long, short, or common.<sup>1</sup>

21. **Long.** — A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. **Short.** — A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dī'-es*, *vi'-ae*, *ni'-hil*.<sup>2</sup>

23. **Common.** — A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally<sup>3</sup> short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-grī*.

24. The signs ¯, ˇ, ¨, denote respectively that the syllables over which they are placed are long, short, or common: *ā-grō-rūm*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Common; i.e., sometimes long, and sometimes short.

<sup>2</sup> No account is taken of the breathing *h*. See 7, 2, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> A vowel is said to be *naturally* short when it is short in its own nature; i.e., in itself, without reference to its position.

<sup>4</sup> By referring to 14, it will be seen, that, in the Continental Method, quantity and sound coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 7 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (26). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus, in *rēx*, *ūrbs*, *ārs*, *sōl*, the vowels are all long in quantity;

## ACCENTUATION.

### I. PRIMARY ACCENT.

25. Monosyllables are treated as accented syllables:  
*mons, nos.*

26. Other words are accented as follows:<sup>1</sup>

1. *Words of two syllables* — always on the first: *men'-sa.*

2. *Words of more than two syllables* — on the *penult*<sup>2</sup> if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the *antepenult*:<sup>3</sup>  
*ho-nō'-ris, con'-sū-lis.*

### II. SECONDARY ACCENTS.

27. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent, — on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity; otherwise on the third:  
*mon'-u-e'-runt, mon'-u-e-ra'-mus, in-stau'-ra-ve'-runt.*

28. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hon'-o-rif'-i-cen-tis'-sī-mus.*

### EXERCISE IV.

*Accent and pronounce the following Words.*

1. Cōrōnā,<sup>3</sup> cōrōnae, cōrōnārūm.<sup>4</sup> 2. Gemmae,<sup>5</sup> gemmā, gemmārūm. 3. Sāpientiae,<sup>6</sup> āmicītia, justītia, glōriae.<sup>7</sup>

but by 8, 1, they all have the short English sounds: while in *āvě, mūrě*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 7, 1, and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity (according to 26), and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity (according to 7-12).

<sup>1</sup> In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

<sup>2</sup> Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

<sup>3</sup> 26, 2; 7, 3, 1).

<sup>4</sup> 11, 1; 26, 1.

<sup>5</sup> 11, 1; 8, 3, 1).

<sup>6</sup> 26, 2; 27.

<sup>7</sup> 27; 8, 3, 1); 12.

4. Săpientiām, amicitiām, justitiām, glōriām. 5. Săpientiā, amicitiā, justitiā, glōriā.

---

## PART SECOND.

### ETYMOLOGY.

---

29. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

30. The Parts of Speech<sup>1</sup> are — *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

---

## CHAPTER I.

### NOUNS.

31. A Noun, or Substantive, is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicēro*, Cicero; *Rōma*, Rome; *puer*, boy; *dōmus*, house.

1. A **Proper Noun** is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicēro*, *Rōma*.

2. A **Common Noun** is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, man; *ēquus*, horse.

32. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

### GENDER.

33. There are three genders,<sup>2</sup> — *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

<sup>1</sup> Thus in Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

<sup>2</sup> In English, *Gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction

34. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

35. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vir*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Nōtus*, south wind; *Aprīlis*, April.

II. FEMININE.

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Rōma*, Rome; *Dēlos*, Delos; *pīrus*, pear-tree.

PERSON AND NUMBER.

37. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

CASES.

38. The Latin has six cases:<sup>1</sup>

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

<sup>1</sup> The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* (*John's*) shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

1. **Oblique Cases.**—In distinction from the Nominative and Vocative (*casus recti*, right cases), the other cases are called *oblique* (*casus obliqui*).

2. **Case-Endings.**—In form, the several cases are, in general, distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *case-endings*: Nom. *mensa*, Gen. *mensae*, &c.

3. **Cases alike.**—But certain cases are not distinguished in form. Thus,

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative*, in *neuters*, are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike in all nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension (45).

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

## DECLENSIONS.

39. The formation of the several cases is called *Declension*.

40. **Five Declensions.**—In Latin, there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the following

### *Genitive Endings.*

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	i,	is,	ūs,	eī. <sup>1</sup>

41. **Stem and Endings.**—In any noun, of whatever declension,

1. The stem<sup>2</sup> may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.)

2. The several cases may be formed by adding to this stem the case-endings.

<sup>1</sup> See 119, 1.

<sup>2</sup> The *stem* is the basis of the word, or the part to which the several endings are added to form the various cases. Thus in the forms, *mensā*, *mensae*, *mensām*, *mensis*, &c., given under 42, it will be observed that *mens* remains unchanged; and that, by the addition of the endings, *a*, *ae*, *am*, *is*, &c., to it, the several cases are formed. Here *mens* is the *stem*; and *a*, *ae*, *am*, *is*, &c., are the *case-endings*.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

42. Nouns of the first declension end in

ă and ă, — *feminine*; ās and ăs, — *masculine*.<sup>1</sup>

But pure Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are declined as follows:

## SINGULAR.

Nom. mensă,	a table,	ă
Gen. mensae,	of a table,	ae
Dat. mensae,	to, for, a table,	ae
Acc. mensăm,	a table,	ăm
Voc. mensă,	O table,	ă
Abl. mensă,	with, from, by, a table,	ă

## PLURAL.

Nom. mensae,	tables,	ae
Gen. mensarum,	of tables,	ărūm
Dat. mensis,	to, for, tables,	is
Acc. mensas,	tables,	ās
Voc. mensae,	O tables,	ae
Abl. mensis,	with, from, by, tables,	is.

1. **Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of this example, it will be seen that the several cases are distinguished from each other by the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.** — With these endings decline:

*Ala*, wing; *ăqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortuna*, fortune; *porta*, gate; *victoria*, victory.

## EXERCISE V.

## I. Vocabulary.

Amicitia,	ac, <sup>2</sup> f. <sup>3</sup>	friendship.
Corona,	ae, f.	crown.

<sup>1</sup> That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

<sup>2</sup> The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia*; Gen., *amicitiae*.

<sup>3</sup> Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

Gemmă	ae, f.	gem.
Glōriă,	ae, f.	glory.
Hōră,	ae, f.	hour.
Justitiă,	ae, f.	justice.
Săpientiă,	ae, f.	wisdom.
Schölă,	ae, f.	school.

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Corōnă,<sup>1</sup> corōnă, corōnae,<sup>2</sup> corōnam, coronārum, corōnis, corōnas. 2. Gemmă, gemmă, gemmae, gemmam, gemmārum, gemmis, gemmas. 3. Săpientiă, amicită, justitiă, gloriă. 4. Săpientiam, amicitiam, justitiam, gloriam. 5. Săpientiă, amicită, justitiă, gloriă. 6. Scholārum, horārum. 7. Scholis, horis. 8. Scholas, horas.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of<sup>3</sup> friendship, of friendships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a<sup>4</sup> crown, of a gem. 11. Crowns, gems. 12. With the<sup>4</sup> crowns, with the gems. 13. Of crowns, of gems.

<sup>1</sup> As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna*, crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*; as, *corōna*, a crown; (3) with the definite article *the*; as, *corōna*, the crown.

<sup>2</sup> When the same Latin form may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus *corōnae* may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of*, *to*, *by*, may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word. Thus *friendship*, *amicitia*; *of friendship*, *amicitiae*.

<sup>4</sup> The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a*, *an*, and *the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all. *Crown*, *a crown*, and *the crown*, are all rendered into Latin by the same word.



## SECOND DECLENSION.

457 Nouns of the second declension end in

**ēr, ir, ūs, os**, — *masculine*; **ūm, on**, — *neuter*.

But pure Latin nouns end only in *er, ir, us, um*, and are declined as follows:

*Servus, slave. Puer, boy. Ager, field. Templum, temple.*

## SINGULAR.

N. <b>servūs</b>	puēr	āgēr	templū <b>m</b>
G. <b>servī</b>	puēr <b>ī</b>	āgr <b>ī</b>	templ <b>ī</b>
D. <b>servō</b>	puēr <b>ō</b>	āgr <b>ō</b>	templ <b>ō</b>
A. <b>servūm</b>	puērū <b>m</b>	āgrū <b>m</b>	templū <b>m</b>
V. <b>servē</b>	puēr	āgēr	templū <b>m</b>
A. <b>servō</b>	puēr <b>ō</b>	āgr <b>ō</b>	templ <b>ō</b>

## PLURAL.

N. <b>servī</b>	puēr <b>ī</b>	āgr <b>ī</b>	templā
G. <b>servōrūm</b>	puērōrū <b>m</b>	āgrōrū <b>m</b>	templōrū <b>m</b>
D. <b>servīs</b>	puēr <b>īs</b>	āgr <b>īs</b>	templ <b>īs</b>
A. <b>servōs</b>	puērō <b>s</b>	āgrō <b>s</b>	templā
V. <b>servī</b>	puēr <b>ī</b>	āgr <b>ī</b>	templā
A. <b>servīs.</b>	puēr <b>īs.</b>	āgr <b>īs.</b>	templ <b>īs.</b>

1. **Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen that they are declined with the following

## Case-endings.

1. ūs.	2. ēr.	3. ūm.
SINGULAR.		
N. ūs	— <sup>1</sup>	ūm
G. ī	ī	ī
D. ō	ō	ō
A. ūm	ūm	ūm
V. ē	— <sup>1</sup>	ūm
A. ō	ō	ō

<sup>1</sup> The endings for the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*: thus *puer* is the stem without any case-ending; the full form would be *puērūs*.

PLURAL.		
N. ī	ī	ă
G. ōrŭm	ōrŭm	ōrŭm
D. is	is	is
A. ōs	ōs	ă
V. ī	ī	ă
A. is.	is.	is.

2. **Examples for Practice.** — Like **SERVUS**: *annus*, year; *dominus*, master. — Like **PUER**: *gēner*, son-in-law; *sōcer*, father-in-law. — Like **AGER**: *fāber*, artisan; *magister*, master. — Like **TEMPLUM**: *bellum*, war; *regnum*, kingdom.

3. **Paradigms.** — Observe

1) That *puer* differs in declension from *servus* only in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc.: Nom. *puer* for *puērus*, Voc. *puer* for *puēre*.

2) That *ager* differs from *puer* only in dropping *e* before *r*.

3) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 38, 3.

## EXERCISE VI.

### I. Vocabulary.

Dōnŭm, ī, n.	gift.
Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.	son-in-law.
Lībēr, librī, m.	book.
Ocŭlŭs, ī, m.	eye.
Praeceptŭm, ī, n.	rule, precept.
Sōcēr, sōcērī, m.	father-in-law.
Tŷrannŭs, ī, m.	tyrant.
Verbŭm, ī, n.	word.

### II. Translate into English.

1. Ocŭlus, ocŭlī, ocŭlo, ocŭlum, ocŭle, ocŭlŭrum, ocŭlis, ocŭlos. 2. Socer, socērī, socēro, socerum, socerŭrum, socēris, socēros. 3. Servi, tyranni. 4. Puērī, genērī. 5. Agri, libri. 6. Templi, doni. 7. Servo, tyranno. 8. Puerum, genērum. 9. Agrŭrum, librŭrum. 10. Tempia, dona. 11. Servum, servos. 12. Genērī, generŭrum. 13. Agri, agrŭ-

rum. 14. *Dono, donis.* 15. *Verbum, praeceptum.* 16. *Verbi, praecepti.*

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The slave, the slaves. 2. For the slave, for the slaves.  
3. Of the slave, of the slaves. 4. Of the father-in-law,  
of the son-in-law. 5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-  
law. 6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law. 7. The  
boy, the field. 8. The boys, the fields. 9. The gift, the  
gifts. 10. With the gift, with the gifts. 11. The tyrant,  
the boy, the book, the precept. 12. Of the tyrant, of the  
boy, of the book, of the precept.

## SECOND DECLENSION — CONTINUED.

### RULE II. — Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:<sup>1</sup>

*Cluilius rex moritur, Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. *Urbes Carthago atque Numantia, the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic.

#### I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline<sup>2</sup> it.
3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, &c.
4. Give its Syntax,<sup>3</sup> and the Rule for it.

<sup>1</sup> A noun or pronoun used to explain or identify another noun or pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*; as, *Cluilius rex*, *Cluilius the king*. Here *rex*, the king, is the appositive, showing the rank or office of *Cluilius*, — *Cluilius the king*. The noun or pronoun to which the appositive is added — *Cluilius* in the example — is called the *subject* of the appositive.

<sup>2</sup> Adjectives in the Comparative or in the Superlative degree (160) should also be compared (162).

<sup>3</sup> By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the Grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the Syntax of *regina*, under the Model, by stating that it is in apposition with its subject, *Artemisia*.

## MODEL.

*Artēmisīā rēgīnā, Artemisia the queen.*

*Regina* is a noun (31) of the First Declension (42), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *regin* (41). Singular: *regīna, regīnae, regīnae, regīnam, regīnā, regīnā*. Plural: *regīnae, regīnārum, regīnis, regīnas, regīnae, regīnis*. It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 35, II. 1. It is in the Nominative Singular, in apposition with its subject *Artemisia*, with which it agrees in case, according to Rule II: "An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE."

## EXERCISE VII.

## I. Vocabulary.

<i>Caiūs, ii, m.</i>	<i>Caius, a proper name.</i>
<i>Filiā, ae, f.</i>	<i>daughter.</i>
<i>Hastā, ae, f.</i>	<i>spear.</i>
<i>Pisistrātūs, i, m.</i>	<i>Pisistratus, Tyrant of Athens.</i>
<i>Rāmūs, i, m.</i>	<i>branch.</i>
<i>Rēgīnā, ae, f.</i>	<i>queen.</i>
<i>Tulliā, ae, f.</i>	<i>Tullia, a proper name.</i>
<i>Victōria, ae, f.</i>	<i>Victoria, Queen of England.</i>

## II. Translate into English.

1. Ramus, hastā.
2. Rami, hastae.
3. Ramo, hastae.
4. Ramum, hastam.
5. Ramo, hastā.
6. Ramōrum, hastārum.
7. Ramis, hastis.
8. Ramos, hastas.
9. Tyranni, tyrannōrum.
10. Verbum, verba.
11. Verbo, verbis.
12. Templum, templa.
13. Templi, templōrum.
14. Pisistrātus tyrannus.<sup>1</sup>
15. Pisistrāti tyranni.
16. Pisistrāto tyranno.
17. Tulliā filiā.
18. Tulliae filiae.
19. Tulliam filiam.

## II. Translate into Latin.

1. The tyrant, the crown.
2. The tyrants, the crowns.

<sup>1</sup> *Tyrannus* is an appositive, in the Nominative, in agreement with its subject, *Pisistrātus*, according to Rule II. 363.

3. Of the tyrant, of the crown. 4. Of the tyrants, of the crowns. 5. To the tyrant, to the crown. 6. To the tyrants, to the crowns. 7. The book, the books. 8. With the book, with the books. 9. Of Pisistratus, for Pisistratus. 10. Of the queen, for the queen. 11. Caius the slave.<sup>1</sup> 12. Of Caius the slave. 13. For Caius the slave. 14. Victoria the queen. 15. For Victoria the queen. 16. Of Victoria the queen.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

48. Nouns of the third declension end in

**a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.**

#### I. MASCULINE ENDINGS:<sup>2</sup>

*o, or, os, er, es increasing in the genitive.* +

#### II. FEMININE ENDINGS:

*as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the genitive; s preceded by a consonant.* +

#### III. NEUTER ENDINGS:

**a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.** |

49. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns which have a case-ending in the Nominative Singular. These all end in *e, s, or x.*

II. Nouns which have no case-ending in the Nominative Singular.

In Class II., the Nom. Sing. is either the same as the stem, or is formed from it by dropping or changing one or more letters of the stem: *consul*, Gen. *consulis*; stem, *consul*, a *consul*: *leo*, *leōnis*; stem, *leon* (Nom. drops *n*), lion: *carmen*, *carminis*; stem, *carmin* (Nom. changes in to *en*), song.

<sup>1</sup> See Rule II. 363.

<sup>2</sup> That is, nouns with these endings are masculine.

## 50. CLASS I.—WITH NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s** *impure*,<sup>1</sup> and **x**:—*with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

Nubes, <i>f.</i> <i>cloud.</i>	Avis, <i>f.</i> <i>bird.</i>	Urbs, <i>f.</i> <i>city.</i>	Rex, <i>m.</i> <i>king.</i>
SINGULAR.			
N. nūbēs	āvīs	urb̄s	rex <sup>2</sup>
G. nubīs	avīs	urbīs	rēgīs
D. nubī	avī	urbī	regī
A. nubēm	avēm	urbēm	regēm
V. nubēs	avīs	urb̄s	rex
A. nubē	avē	urbē	regē

PLURAL.			
N. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
G. nubīum	aviūm	urbīum	regūm
D. nubībūs	avībūs	urbībūs	regībūs
A. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
V. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
A. nubībūs.	avībūs.	urbībūs.	regībūs.

II. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s** *impure*, and **x**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Miles, <i>m.</i> <i>soldier.</i>	Lapis, <i>m. f.</i> <i>stone.</i>	Ars, <i>f.</i> <i>art.</i>	Judex, <i>m. and f.</i> <i>judge.</i>
SINGULAR.			
N. milēs	lāpis	ars	jūdex <sup>2</sup>
G. militīs	lapdīs	artīs	judicīs
D. militī	lapdī	artī	judicī
A. militēm	lapdēm	artēm	judicēm
V. milēs	lapīs	ars	judex
A. militē	lapdē	artē	judicē

PLURAL.			
N. militēs	lapdēs	artēs	judicēs
G. militūm	lapdūm	artiūm	judiciūm

<sup>1</sup> *Impure*; i.e., preceded by a consonant.

<sup>2</sup> X in rex = *gs*; *g* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending: but in judex, x = *cs*; *c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending.

D. milit <b>ib</b> ūs	lapid <b>ib</b> ūs	art <b>ib</b> ūs	judic <b>ib</b> ūs
A. milit <b>ēs</b>	lapid <b>ēs</b>	art <b>ēs</b>	judic <b>ēs</b>
V. milit <b>ēs</b>	lapid <b>ēs</b>	art <b>ēs</b>	judic <b>ēs</b>
A. milit <b>ib</b> ūs.	lapid <b>ib</b> ūs.	art <b>ib</b> ūs.	judic <b>ib</b> ūs.

III. Nouns in **as, os, us**, and **e**:— *those in as, os, and us with stem changed, those in e with stem unchanged.*

Civitas, <i>f.</i> <i>state.</i>	Nepos, <i>m.</i> <i>grandson.</i>	Virtus, <i>f.</i> <i>virtue.</i>	Mare, <i>n.</i> <i>sea.</i>
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	--------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. civit <b>ās</b>	nēp <b>ōs</b>	virt <b>ūs</b>	mār <b>ē</b>
G. civitat <b>is</b>	nepōt <b>is</b>	virtūt <b>is</b>	mar <b>is</b>
D. civitat <b>i</b>	nepōt <b>i</b>	virtūt <b>i</b>	mar <b>i</b>
A. civitat <b>ēm</b>	nepōt <b>ēm</b>	virtūt <b>ēm</b>	mar <b>ē</b>
V. civit <b>ās</b>	nep <b>ōs</b>	virt <b>ūs</b>	mar <b>ē</b>
A. civitat <b>ē</b>	nepōt <b>ē</b>	virtūt <b>ē</b>	mar <b>i</b> <sup>2</sup>

PLURAL.

N. civitat <b>ēs</b>	nepōt <b>ēs</b>	virtūt <b>ēs</b>	mar <b>iā</b>
G. civitat <b>ium</b> <sup>1</sup>	nepōt <b>ium</b>	virtūt <b>ium</b>	mar <b>ium</b>
D. civitat <b>ib</b> ūs	nepot <b>ib</b> ūs	virtut <b>ib</b> ūs	mar <b>ib</b> ūs
A. civitat <b>ēs</b>	nepōt <b>ēs</b>	virtūt <b>ēs</b>	mar <b>iā</b>
V. civitat <b>ēs</b>	nepōt <b>ēs</b>	virtūt <b>ēs</b>	mar <b>iā</b>
A. civitat <b>ib</b> ūs.	nepot <b>ib</b> ūs.	virtut <b>ib</b> ūs.	mar <b>ib</b> ūs.

51. CLASS II. — WITHOUT NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **l** and **r**:— *with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

Sol, <i>m.</i> <i>sun.</i>	Consul, <i>m.</i> <i>consul.</i>	Passer, <i>m.</i> <i>sparrow.</i>	Vultur, <i>m.</i> <i>vulture.</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. s <b>ol</b>	cons <b>ul</b>	pass <b>ēr</b>	vult <b>ūr</b>
G. s <b>ol</b> is	cons <b>ul</b> is	pass <b>ēr</b> is	vult <b>ūr</b> is
D. s <b>ol</b> i	cons <b>ul</b> i	pass <b>ēr</b> i	vult <b>ūr</b> i
A. s <b>ol</b> ēm	cons <b>ul</b> ēm	pass <b>ēr</b> ēm	vult <b>ūr</b> ēm
V. s <b>ol</b>	cons <b>ul</b>	pass <b>ēr</b>	vult <b>ūr</b>
A. s <b>ol</b> ē	cons <b>ul</b> ē	pass <b>ēr</b> ē	vult <b>ūr</b> ē

PLURAL.

N. s <b>ol</b> ēs	cons <b>ul</b> ēs	pass <b>ēr</b> ēs	vult <b>ūr</b> ēs
G.	cons <b>ul</b> ium	pass <b>ēr</b> ium	vult <b>ūr</b> ium
D. s <b>ol</b> ib <b>us</b>	consul <b>ib</b> ūs	passer <b>ib</b> ūs	vultur <b>ib</b> ūs

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes *civitatium*.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes *mare* in poetry.

A. sölēs	constlēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
V. sölēs	constlēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
A. sölībūs.	consulībūs.	passerībūs.	vulturībūs.

II. Nouns in **o** and **r**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Leo, <i>m.</i> <i>lion.</i>	Virgo, <i>f.</i> <i>maiden.</i>	Pater, <i>m.</i> <i>father.</i>	Pastor, <i>m.</i> <i>shepherd.</i>
--------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

## SINGULAR.

N. leo	virgo	pätēr	pastör
G. leönīs	virgīnīs	pät̄rīs	pastörīs
D. leönī	virgīnī	pat̄rī	pastörī
A. leönēm	virgīnēm	patrēm	pastörēm
V. leo	virgo	patēr	pastör
A. leönē	virgīnē	patrē	pastörē

## PLURAL.

N. leönēs	virgīnēs	patrēs	pastörēs
G. leönūm	virgīnūm	patrūm	pastörūm
D. leonībūs	virgīnībūs	patribūs	pastörībūs
A. leönēs	virgīnēs	patrēs	pastörēs
V. leönēs	virgīnēs	patrēs	pastörēs
A. leonībūs.	virgīnībūs.	patribūs.	pastörībūs.

III. Nouns in **en**, **us**, and **ut**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Carmen, <i>n.</i> <i>song.</i>	Opus, <i>n.</i> <i>work.</i>	Corpus, <i>n.</i> <i>body.</i>	Capūt, <i>n.</i> <i>head.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

## SINGULAR.

N. carmēn	öpūs	corpūs	cäpūt
G. carminīs	opērīs	corpörīs	capītīs
D. carminī	opērī	corpörī	capītī
A. carmēn	opūs	corpūs	capūt
V. carmēn	opūs	corpūs	capūt
A. carminē	opērē	corpörē	capītē

## PLURAL.

N. carminā	opērā	corpörā	capītā
G. carminūm	opērūm	corpörūm	capītūm
D. carminībūs	operībūs	corporībūs	capitībūs
A. carminā	opērā	corpörā	capītā
V. carminā	opērā	corpörā	capītā
A. carminībūs.	operībūs.	corporībūs.	capitībūs.



**52. Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen,

1. That the nouns belonging to Class II. differ from those of Class I. only in taking no case-ending in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

2. That all nouns of both classes are declined with the following

*Case-Endings.*

SINGULAR.

Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> s <sup>1</sup> (es, is) — <sup>2</sup>	ě — <sup>2</sup>
<i>Gen.</i> is	is
<i>Dat.</i> i	i
<i>Acc.</i> ěm (im) <sup>3</sup>	like Nom.
<i>Voc.</i> like Nom.	“ “
<i>Abl.</i> ě, i	ě, i

PLURAL.

Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> ěs	ě, iě
<i>Gen.</i> ům, iům	ům, iům
<i>Dat.</i> ibůs	ibůs
<i>Acc.</i> ěs	ě, iě
<i>Voc.</i> ěs	ě, iě
<i>Abl.</i> ibůs.	ibůs.

**53. Declension.** — To apply these endings in declension, we must know, besides the Nominative Singular,

1. *The Gender*, as that shows which set of endings must be used.

2. *The Genitive Singular* (or some oblique case), as that contains the *stem* (41) to which these endings must be added.

<sup>1</sup> In nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *s* is the case-ending, and the *c* or *g* belongs to the stem.

<sup>2</sup> The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting, as in all nouns of Class II.

<sup>3</sup> The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

## 54. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE:

## Class I.

Rūpes,	Gen. rupis, f.	rock;	hospes,	Gen. hospitis, m.	guest.
vestis,	vestis, f.	garment;	cuspis,	cuspidis, f.	spear.
trabs,	trābis, f.	beam;	mons,	montis, m.	mountain.
lex,	lēgis, f.	law;	āpex,	apicis, m.	summit.
libertas,	libertātis, f.	liberty;	sālus,	salūtis, f.	safety.
sedile,	sedilis, n.	seat;			

## Class II.

Exsul,	Gen. exsulis, m. and f.	exile;	dōlor,	Gen. dolōris, m.	pain.
actio,	actiōnis, f.	action;	imāgo,	imaginis, f.	image.
anser,	ansēris, m.	goose;	frāter,	fratris, m.	brother.
nōmen,	nomīnis, n.	name;	tempus,	tempōris, n.	time.

## RULE XVI — Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:<sup>1</sup>

*Catōnis orātiōnes*, *Cato's orations*. *Cic. Castra hostium*, *the camp of the enemy*. *Liv. Mors Hāmilcāris*, *the death of Hamilcar*. *Liv.*

## MODEL FOR PARSING.

*Catōnis orātiōnēs*, *Cato's orations*.

*Catōnis* is a proper noun, as it is the name of a person (31, 1). It is of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40); of Class II., as it has no Nominative Ending (49, II. and 51, II.): STEM, *Catōn* (41); Nom. *Cato* (*n* dropped, 49, II.). Singu-

---

<sup>1</sup> The Appositive (363, p. 15) and this qualifying Genitive resemble each other in the fact that they both qualify the meaning of another noun: *Cluilius rex*, *Cluilius the king*; *Catōnis orātiōnes*, *Cato's orations*, or the orations of Cato. Here the Appositive *rex* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *Cluilius* by showing *what* *Cluilius* is meant, — *Cluilius the king*. In a similar manner, the Genitive *Catōnis* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *orātiōnes* by showing *what* orations are meant, — *the orations of Cato*. Yet the Appositive and the Genitive are readily distinguished by the fact that the former qualifies a noun denoting the *same* person or

lar:<sup>1</sup> *Cato, Catōnis, Catōni, Catōnem, Cato, Catōne*. It is of the Masculine gender, as the names of males are masculine by §5, I. 1. It is in the Genitive Singular, depending upon *orātiōnes*, according to Rule XVI: "Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive."

THIRD DECLENSION — CONTINUED. — CLASS I.<sup>2</sup>

EXERCISE VIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Civīs, civīs, m. and f.</i>	<i>citizen.</i>
<i>Lex, lēgis, f.</i>	<i>law.</i>
<i>Mors, mortis, f.</i>	<i>death.</i>
<i>Pax, pācis, f.</i>	<i>peace.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Nubis, nubium.* 2. *Nubem, nubes.* 3. *Avis, aves.*
4. *Avi, avibus.* 5. *Urbs, urbes.* 6. *Urbi, urbibus.* 7. *Rex, reges.*
8. *Regis, regum.* 9. *Nubēs, milēs.* 10. *Nubis, militis.*
11. *Nubem, militem.* 12. *Rex, judex.* 13. *Regis, judicis.*
14. *Reges, judices.* 15. *Civitas, civitates.*
16. *Virtus, virtutes.* 17. *Mors regis.*<sup>3</sup> 18. *Morte regis.*
19. *Mortes regum.* 20. *Virtus judicis.* 21. *Pacis gloria.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizen, to the citizen, of the citizen, of citizens, for citizens.
2. A cloud, clouds, of a cloud, of clouds, with a cloud, with clouds.
3. A king, a law.
4. Kings, laws.

thing as itself, while the Genitive qualifies a noun denoting a *different* person or thing. Thus, in the examples above, *Cluilius* and the Appositive *rex* denote the *same* person; while *oratiōnes* and the Genitive *Catōnis* denote entirely *different* objects.

<sup>1</sup> As *Cato* is the name of a person, the Plural is seldom used.

<sup>2</sup> This exercise furnishes practice in the declension of nouns belonging to Class I. of the Third Declension. See 50.

<sup>3</sup> *Regis* is in the Genitive, and qualifies the meaning of *mors*, according to Rule XVI. 395.

5. Of the king, of the law. 6. Of the kings, of the laws.  
 7. To the king, to the law. 8. To the kings, to the laws.  
 9. The law of the state.<sup>1</sup> 10. The laws of the state.

THIRD DECLENSION — CONTINUED. — CLASS II  
 PREPOSITIONS.

**RULE XXXII.** — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.<sup>2</sup>

Ad *amicum* scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In *cūriam*, *into the senate-house.* Liv. In *Italiā*,<sup>3</sup> *in Italy.* Nep. Pro *castris*, *before the camp.*

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Ad *amicum*, *To a friend.*

*Amicum* is a noun (31) of the Second Declension (45), as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *amic* (41). Singular: *amicus*, *amici*, *amico*, *amicum*, *amice*, *amico*. Plural: *amici*, *amicorum*, *amicis*, *amicos*, *amici*, *amicis*. It is of the Masculine gender by 45, is in the Accusative Singular, and is used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII.: "The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions." The Accusative is used with *ad*.

<sup>1</sup> The Latin word for *of the state* will be in the Genitive, according to Rule XVI. 395.

<sup>2</sup> The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me. Here *in* and *ante* are prepositions. In the Vocabularies, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. It has not been thought advisable at this early stage of the course to burden the memory of the learner with a list of prepositions and their cases.

<sup>3</sup> Here the Ablative *Italia* is used with *in*; though, in the second example, the Accusative *curiam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the Accusative when it means *into*, and with the Ablative when it means *in*.

EXERCISE IX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ad, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	to, towards.
Cicērō, Cicērōnis, <i>m.</i>	Cicero, the Roman orator.
Consūl, consūlis, <i>m.</i>	consul. <sup>1</sup>
Contrā, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	against, contrary to.
Exsūl, exsūlis, <i>m. and f.</i>	exile.
Frāter, frātris, <i>m.</i>	brother.
Nōmēn, nōmīnis, <i>n.</i>	name.
Orātiō, orātiōnis, <i>f.</i>	oration, speech.
Orātōr, orātōris, <i>m.</i>	orator.
Victōr, victōris, <i>m.</i>	victor, conqueror.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Leo, leōnis, leōnes. 2. Virgo, virgīnis, virgīnes. 3. Solis, solem, soles. 4. Consūlis, consūlem, consūles. 5. Solibus, consulibus. 6. Passēris, vultūris. 7. Passerum, vulturum. 8. Patri, pastōri. 9. Patres, pastōres. 10. Carmen, carmina. 11. Caput, capita. 12. Opēris, corpōris. 13. Cicerōnis<sup>2</sup> oratio. 14. Cicerōnis oratiōnes. 15. Oratiōne consūlis. 16. Ad gloriā.<sup>3</sup> 17. Contra regem.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles. 3. Of an exile, of the exiles. 4. The shepherd, the orator. 5. Of shepherds, of orators. 6. Shepherds, orators. 7. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 8. A song, a name. 9. Songs,

<sup>1</sup> The *consuls* were joint presidents of the Roman commonwealth. They were elected annually, and were two in number.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XVI. 395, and Model.

<sup>3</sup> The Accusative *gloriā* is here used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII. 432.

names. 10. Of songs, of names. 11. Father, brother. 12. To<sup>1</sup> the father, to the brother. 13. Contrary to the law.<sup>2</sup> 14. Contrary to the laws of the state.

#### FOURTH DECLENSION.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

**us**, — *masculine*; **u**, — *neuter*.

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, <i>fruit</i> .	Cornu, <i>horn</i> .	Case-Endings.	
SINGULAR.			
N. fruct <b>us</b>	corn <b>u</b>	<b>us</b>	<b>u</b>
G. fruct <b>us</b>	corn <b>us</b>	<b>us</b>	<b>us</b>
D. fruct <b>ui</b>	corn <b>u</b>	<b>ui</b>	<b>u</b>
A. fruct <b>um</b>	corn <b>u</b>	<b>um</b>	<b>u</b>
V. fruct <b>us</b>	corn <b>u</b>	<b>us</b>	<b>u</b>
A. fruct <b>u</b>	corn <b>u</b>	<b>u</b>	<b>u</b>
PLURAL.			
N. fruct <b>us</b>	corn <b>u</b> <b>ŭ</b>	<b>us</b>	<b>u</b> <b>ŭ</b>
G. fruct <b>uum</b>	corn <b>uum</b>	<b>uum</b>	<b>uum</b>
D. fruct <b>ibus</b>	corn <b>ibus</b>	<b>ibus</b> ( <b>ibus</b> )	<b>ibus</b> ( <b>ibus</b> )
A. fruct <b>us</b>	corn <b>u</b> <b>ŭ</b>	<b>us</b>	<b>u</b> <b>ŭ</b>
V. fruct <b>us</b>	corn <b>u</b> <b>ŭ</b>	<b>us</b>	<b>u</b> <b>ŭ</b>
A. fruct <b>ibus</b> .	corn <b>ibus</b> .	<b>ibus</b> ( <b>ibus</b> ).	<b>ibus</b> ( <b>ibus</b> ).

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Cantus* song; *curtus*, chariot; *cursus*, course; *versus*, verse; *genu*, knee.

<sup>1</sup> To should still be regarded as a sign of the Dative, though it may sometimes be rendered by the preposition *ad*.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XXXII. 432. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

EXERCISE X.

I. Vocabulary.

Adventūs, ūs, m.	arrival, approach.
Antē, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	before.
Caesār, Caesāris, m.	Caesar, a Roman surname.
Cantūs, ūs, m.	singing, song.
Conspectūs, ūs, m.	sight, presence.
Exercītūs, ūs, m.	army.
Hostīs, hostīs, m. and f.	enemy.
Impētūs, ūs, m.	attack.
In, <i>prep.</i>	into with acc., in with abl.
Luscīniā, ae, f.	nightingale.
Occāsūs, ūs, m.	the setting, as of the sun.
Post, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	after.
Ver, vēris, n.	spring.

II. Translate into English.

1. Fructus, cantus. 2. Fructibus, cantibus. 3. Cantus luscinae.<sup>1</sup> 4. Cantu luscinae. 5. Cantibus lusciniarum. 6. Adventus veris. 7. Post adventum<sup>2</sup> veris.<sup>1</sup> 8. Solis occāsus. 9. Post solis occāsum. 10. Caesāris adventu. 11. Ante adventum Caesāris. 12. Impētus hostium. 13. Impētu hostium. 14. In conspectu exercītus.

III. Translate into Latin.

1. The army, the armies. 2. For the army, for the armies. 3. Of the army, of the armies. 4. The arrival of the army. 5. Before the arrival of the army. 6. After<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, according to Rule XVI. See p. 22.

<sup>2</sup> Used with *post*, according to Rule XXXII. See p. 24.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule XXXII. 432, p. 24. The pupil will remember that the English prepositions, *to*, *for*, *with*, *from*, *by*, are generally rendered into Latin by merely putting the noun in the proper case, i.e. in the Dative for *to* or *for*, and in the Ablative for *with*, *from*, *by*. Other English prepositions, *before*, *after*, *behind*, *between*, etc., are rendered into Latin by corresponding Latin prepositions.

the arrival of the consul. 7. The singing of the night-  
ingale. 8. After the setting of the sun. 9. Before the  
attack of the enemy. 10. After the attack of the enemy.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

119. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, — *feminine*,  
and are declined as follows:

Dies, <i>day</i> . <sup>1</sup>	Res, <i>thing</i> .	Case-Endings.
SINGULAR.		
N. diēs	rēs	ēs
G. diēī	rēī	eī
D. diēī	rēī	eī
A. diēm	rēm	ēm
V. diēs	rēs	ēs
A. diē	rē	ē
PLURAL.		
N. diēs	rēs	ēs
G. diērūm	rērūm	ērūm
D. diēbūs	rēbūs	ēbūs
A. diēs	rēs	ēs
V. diēs	rēs	ēs
A. diēbūs.	rēbūs.	ēbūs.

1. *Case-Endings*.—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

*E* in *ei* is generally short when preceded by a consonant, otherwise long.

2. *Examples for Practice*.<sup>2</sup>—*Acies*, battle-array; *effigies*, effigy; *facies*, face; *series*, series; *species*, form; *spes*, hope.

<sup>1</sup> *Dies*, day, is an exception in Gender, as it is generally *masculine*, though sometimes *feminine* in the singular.

<sup>2</sup> Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want, in the Plural, the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. These cases must, therefore, be omitted in declining these examples.



# COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

## 121. Case-Endings of Latin nouns.<sup>1</sup>

SINGULAR.							
Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		D. V.
Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	M. & F.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
N. ā	ūs — <sup>2</sup>	ūm	s (es, is) <sup>3</sup>	ē —	ūs	ū	ēs
G. ae	ī	ī	īs	īs	ūs	ūs	ēī
D. ae	ō	ō	ī	ī	uī	ū	ēī
A. ūm	ūm	ūm	ēm (īm)	like nom.	ūm	ū	ēm
V. ā	ē —	ūm	like nom.	like nom.	ūs	ū	ēs
A. ā	ō	ō	ē (ī)	ē (ī)	ū	ū	ē
PLURAL.							
N. ae	ī	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
G. ārum	ōrum	ōrum	ūm (iūm)	ūm (iūm)	uūm	uūm	ērūm
D. īs	īs	īs	ībūs	ībūs	ībūs (ūbūs)	ībūs (ūbūs)	ēbūs
A. ās	ōs	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
V. ae	ī	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
A. īs.	īs	īs.	ībūs	ībūs.	ībūs (ūbūs)	ībūs (ūbūs).	ēbūs.

## EXERCISE XI.

### I. Vocabulary.

Aciēs, āciēī, <i>f.</i>	<i>battle-array, army.</i>
Amicūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>friend.</i>
Cībūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>food.</i>
Dē, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>concerning.</i>
Diēs, diēī, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>day.</i>
Fāciēs, fāciēī, <i>f.</i>	<i>face, appearance.</i>
Nūmērūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>number, quantity.</i>
Rēs, rēī, <i>f.</i>	<i>thing, affair.</i>
Spēciēs, spēciēī, <i>f.</i>	<i>appearance.</i>
Spēs, spēī, <i>f.</i>	<i>hope.</i>
Victōriā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>victory.</i>

<sup>1</sup> This table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

<sup>2</sup> The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting: *er* and *ir* in Dec. II., it will be remembered, are not case-endings, but parts of the stem (45, 1).

<sup>3</sup> The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Diēi, diērum, diēbus. 2. Aciēi, aciem, acie. 3. Diem, speciem. 4. Die, specie. 5. Res, spes. 6. Rei, spei. 7. Victoriae spes. 8. Victoriae spe. 9. Diēi horae. 10. Numērus diērum. 11. Gloria, cibus, nubes, cantus, facies. 12. Glorīae, cibi, nubis, cantus, faciēi. 13. Gloriam, cibum, nubem, cantum, faciem.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A day, days. 2. Of the day, of the days. 3. For the day, for the days. 4. The thing, the things. 5. With the thing, with the things. 6. Concerning the thing, concerning the things. 7. Of the thing, of the things. 8. Concerning the battle-array. 9. Wisdom, friend, citizen, fruit, hope. 10. For wisdom, for a citizen, for hope.

## CHAPTER II.

## ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good; *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies; *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

## I. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

148. Adjectives of this class have in the nominative singular the endings:

Masc., Dec. II.	Fem., Dec. I.	Neut., Dec. II.
<b>us</b> — <sup>1</sup> ,	<b>a</b> ,	<b>um</b> .

They are declined as follows:

**Bonus, good.**

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> <b>bōnūs</b>	<b>bōnā</b>	<b>bōnūm</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonī</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>bonō</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonō</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>bōnūm</b>	<b>bōnām</b>	<b>bōnūm</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>bonē</b>	<b>bonā</b>	<b>bōnūm</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>bonō</b>	<b>bonā</b>	<b>bonō ;</b>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> <b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonā</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>bonōrūm</b>	<b>bonārūm</b>	<b>bonōrūm</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>bonōs</b>	<b>bonās</b>	<b>bonā</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonā</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs.</b>

**Liber, free.**

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i> <b>libēr</b>	<b>libērā</b>	<b>libērūm</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>libērī</b>	<b>libērae</b>	<b>libērī</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>libērō</b>	<b>libērae</b>	<b>libērō</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>libērūm</b>	<b>libērām</b>	<b>libērūm</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>libēr</b>	<b>libērā</b>	<b>libērūm</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>libērō</b>	<b>libērā</b>	<b>libērō ;</b>

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> <b>libērī</b>	<b>libērae</b>	<b>libērā</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>libērōrūm</b>	<b>libērārūm</b>	<b>libērōrūm</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>libērīs</b>	<b>libērīs</b>	<b>libērīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>libērōs</b>	<b>libērās</b>	<b>libērā</b>
<i>Voc.</i> <b>libērī</b>	<b>libērae</b>	<b>libērā</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>libērīs</b>	<b>libērīs</b>	<b>libērīs.</b>

<sup>1</sup> The dash indicates that the ending is sometimes wanting. See 45, 1.

*Aeger, sick..*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegēr</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegræ</i>	<i>aegrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegræ</i>	<i>aegrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>	<i>aegrām</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aeger</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrō ;</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegræ</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrōrūm</i>	<i>aegrārūm</i>	<i>aegrōrūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrōs</i>	<i>aegrās</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegræ</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs.</i>

1. *Bonus* is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Dec. II. (45), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Dec. I. (42), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Dec. II. (45).

2. *Liber* differs in declension from *bonus* only in dropping *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. (45, 3, 1). *Aeger* differs from *liber* only in dropping *e* before *r* (45, 3, 2).

3. Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger*.

## RULE XXXIII. — Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

*Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind.*<sup>1</sup> Cic. *Verae amicitiae, true friendships.* Cic. *Māgister optimus, the best teacher.* Cic.

---

<sup>1</sup> Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna*. It is declined like *bonus*: *caecus, caeca, caecum*.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Vērae amicitiae, *True friendships.*

*Verae* is an adjective (146) of the First and Second Declensions (147): STEM, *ver* (41, 148, 1). Singular: N. *verus, verū, verum*; G. *veri, verae, veri*; D. *vero, verae, vero*; A. *verum, veram, verum*; V. *vere, verū, verum*; A. *vero, verā, vero*. Plural: N. *veri, verae, vera*; G. *verorum, verarum, verorum*; D. *veris, veris, veris*; A. *veros, veras, vera*; V. *veri, verae, vera*; A. *veris, veris, veris*. It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiae*, according to Rule XXXIII: "An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE."

EXERCISE XII.

I. • *Vocabulary.*

Annūlūs, ī, m.	ring.
Aureūs, ā, ūm, <sup>1</sup>	golden.
Beātūs, ā, ūm,	happy, blessed.
Bōnūs, ā, ūm,	good.
Egrēgiūs, ā, ūm,	distinguished.
Fidūs, ā, ūm,	faithful.
Grātūs, ā, ūm,	acceptable, pleasing.
Magnūs, ā, ūm,	great.
Multūs, ā, ūm,	much, many.
Puellā, ae, f.	girl.
Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,	beautiful.
Rēgīnā, ae, f.	queen.
Rēgnūm, ī, n.	kingdom.
Vērūs, ā, ūm,	true.
Vitā, ae, f.	life.

<sup>1</sup> The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus*, 148.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amīcus fidus.<sup>1</sup> 2. Amīci fidi. 3. Amīco fido. 4. Amīcum fidum. 5. Amīce fide. 6. Amicōrum fidōrum. 7. Amīcis fidis. 8. Amīcos fidos. 9. Corōnă aureă. 10. Corōnae aureae. 11. Corōnam auream. 12. Corōnă aureă. 13. Coronārum aureārum. 14. Corōnis aureis. 15. Corōnas aureas. 16. Donum gratum. 17. Doni grati. 18. Dono grato. 19. Dona grata. 20. Donōrum gratōrum. 21. Donis gratis. 22. Ager pulcher. 23. Puellă pulchră. 24. Donum pulchrum. 25. Agri pulchri. 26. Puellae pulchrae. 27. Dona pulchra. 28. Beătă vită. 29. Aureus annūlus. 30. Aurei annūli. 31. Magnă gloriă. 32. Egregiă victoriă.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A true<sup>2</sup> friend. 2. The true<sup>2</sup> friends. 3. For a true friend. 4. For true friends. 5. Of the true friend. 6. Of true friends. 7. True glory. 8. With true glory. 9. Of true glory. 10. An acceptable word. 11. Acceptable words. 12. With acceptable words. 13. Of acceptable words. 14. A beautiful book. 15. The beautiful books. 16. With a beautiful book. 17. Of beautiful books. 18. The beautiful queen. 19. The crown of the beautiful queen. 20. The beautiful crown of the queen. 21. A good king, a good queen, a good kingdom. 22. The brothers of the good king.

---

<sup>1</sup> In Latin the adjective generally follows its noun, as in this example; though sometimes it precedes it, as in English. When emphatic, the adjective is placed before its noun; as, *Verae amicitiae*, true friendships. *Fidus* agrees with *amicus*, according to Rule XXXIII.

<sup>2</sup> Be sure and put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIII.

## II. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

150. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes :

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms, — one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms, — the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form, — the same for all genders.

151. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS of this declension have in the nominative singular :

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<b>er,</b>	<b>is,</b>	<b>e.</b>

They are declined as follows :

### *Acer, sharp.*

#### SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. ācēr</i>	<i>ācrīs</i>	<i>ācrē</i>
<i>G. acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>
<i>D. acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>
<i>A. acrēm</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>V. acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>A. acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī ;</i>

#### PLURAL.

<i>N. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acrīā</i>
<i>G. acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>
<i>D. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>
<i>A. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acrīā</i>
<i>V. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acrīā</i>
<i>A. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs.</i>

152. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS have in the nominative singular:

M. and F.	Neut.
1. <b>is</b>	<b>e</b> , for positives.
2. <b>ior (or)</b>	<b>ius (us)</b> , for comparatives.

They are declined as follows:

Tristis, *sad*.

Tristior, *more sad*.<sup>1</sup>

#### SINGULAR.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. trist <b>is</b>	trist <b>ē</b>	N. tristior	tristi <b>us</b>
G. trist <b>is</b>	trist <b>is</b>	G. tristior <b>is</b>	tristi <b>ōris</b>
D. trist <b>i</b>	trist <b>i</b>	D. tristior <b>i</b>	tristi <b>ōri</b>
A. trist <b>em</b>	trist <b>ē</b>	A. tristior <b>em</b>	tristi <b>us</b>
V. trist <b>is</b>	trist <b>ē</b>	V. tristior	tristi <b>us</b>
A. trist <b>i</b>	trist <b>i</b> ;	A. tristior <b>ē (i)</b>	tristi <b>ōrē (i)</b> ;

#### PLURAL.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. trist <b>ēs</b>	tristi <b>ā</b>	N. tristior <b>ēs</b>	tristi <b>ōrā</b>
G. trist <b>ium</b>	tristi <b>um</b>	G. tristior <b>um</b>	tristi <b>ōrum</b>
D. trist <b>ibus</b>	tristi <b>bus</b>	D. tristior <b>ibus</b>	tristi <b>ōribus</b>
A. trist <b>ēs</b>	tristi <b>ā</b>	A. tristior <b>ēs</b>	tristi <b>ōrā</b>
V. trist <b>ēs</b>	tristi <b>ā</b>	V. tristior <b>ēs</b>	tristi <b>ōrā</b>
A. trist <b>ibus</b>	tristi <b>bus</b> .	A. tristior <b>ibus</b>	tristi <b>ōribus</b> .

153. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.—All other adjectives have but one form in the nominative singular for all genders. They generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings. The following are examples:

Felix, *happy*.

Prudens, *prudent*.

#### SINGULAR.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. fel <b>ix</b>	fel <b>ix</b>	N. prud <b>ens</b>	prud <b>ens</b>
G. fel <b>icis</b>	fel <b>icis</b>	G. prud <b>entis</b>	prud <b>entis</b>
D. fel <b>ici</b>	fel <b>ici</b>	D. prud <b>enti</b>	prud <b>enti</b>
A. fel <b>icem</b>	fel <b>ix</b>	A. prud <b>entem</b>	prud <b>ens</b>
V. fel <b>ix</b>	fel <b>ix</b>	V. prud <b>ens</b>	prud <b>ens</b>
A. fel <b>icē (i)</b>	fel <b>icē (i)</b> ;	A. prud <b>entē (i)</b>	prud <b>entē (i)</b> ;

<sup>1</sup> Comparative. See 160.



PLURAL.

N. felicēs	feli <i>c</i> iā	N. prudentēs	prudentiā
G. feliciūm	feli <i>c</i> iūm	G. prudentiūm	prudentiūm
D. felicibūs	feli <i>c</i> ibūs	D. prudentibūs	prudentibūs
A. felicēs	feli <i>c</i> iā	A. prudentēs	prudentiā
V. felicēs	feli <i>c</i> iā	V. prudentēs	prudentiā
A. felicibūs	feli <i>c</i> ibūs.	A. prudentibūs	prudentibūs.

EXERCISE XIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Acēr, ācris, ācrē,	<i>sharp, severe.</i>
Animāl, ānimālis, n.	<i>animal.</i>
Brēvis, ē,	<i>short, brief.</i>
Crūdēlis, ē,	<i>cruel.</i>
Dōlōr, dōlōris, m.	<i>pain, grief.</i>
Dux, dūcis, m.	<i>leader.</i>
Fertīlis, ē,	<i>fertile.</i>
Fortis, ē,	<i>brave.</i>
Nāvālis, ē,	<i>naval.</i>
Omnis, ē,	<i>every, all, whole.</i>
Pugnā, ae, f.	<i>battle.</i>
Sāpiens, sāpientis,	<i>wise.</i>
Singulāris, ē,	<i>singular, remarkable.</i>
Utilis, ē,	<i>useful.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Dolor acer. <sup>sharp pain</sup>
2. Dolores acres. <sup>severe pains</sup>
3. Lex acris. <sup>severe law</sup>
4. Leg-  
ibūs acribūs. <sup>in severe laws</sup>
5. Hostis crudelis. <sup>cruel enemy</sup>
6. Hostem crudēlem.
7. Miles fortis. <sup>brave soldier</sup>
8. Virtus militis<sup>1</sup> fortis.
9. Virtūte mili-  
tum<sup>1</sup> fortium.
10. Ager fertīlis.
11. In agro fertīli.
12. Agros fertīles.
13. In agris fertīlibus.
14. Post vitam  
brevem.
15. Pugnae navāles.
16. Post pugnās navāles.
17. Singulāris virtus.
18. Singulāri virtūte.
19. Omne  
animāl.
20. Omnia animalia.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, according to Rule XVI.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A useful citizen. 2. Of useful citizens. 3. For a useful citizen. 4. For useful citizens. 5. Of a useful citizen. 6. The wise judge. 7. Wise judges. 8. For the wise judge. 9. For wise judges. 10. Brave soldiers. 11. For brave soldiers. 12. A brave soldier. 13. Of the brave soldier. 14. The brave leader. 15. Brave leaders. 16. The word of the brave leader. 17. By the words of the brave leader.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms to denote different degrees of quality. They are usually called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*,<sup>1</sup> high, higher, highest.

Comparatives and superlatives are sometimes best rendered into English by *too* and *very*, instead of *more* and *most*: *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, more learned, or too learned; *doctissimus*, most learned, or very learned.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. *Terminational Comparison*—by endings.

II. *Adverbial Comparison*—by adverbs.

## I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issīmūs,	issīmā,	issīmūm.

<sup>1</sup> Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimus* are declined like *bonus*, 148: *altus*, *a*, *um*; *alti*, *ae*, *i*, etc.; *altissimus*, *a*, *um*; *altissimi*, *ae*, *i*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 152: *altior*, *altius*; *altiōris*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

Altus, altior, altissimus: *high, higher, highest.*

lēvis, levior, levissimus: *light, lighter, lightest.*

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxīme*, most, to the positive:

Arduus, māgis arduus, maxīme arduus.

*Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.*

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Orātōr clārīōr, *A more renowned orator.*

*Clarior* is an adjective (146) in the Comparative degree (160, 162), from the positive *clarus*, which is of the First and Second Declensions (148). Positive, *clārus*; STEM, *clār*; Comparative, *clārīor*; Superlative, *clārissimus*. *Clarior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (152). Singular: N. *clarior*, *clarius*; G. *clārīoris*, *clārīoris*, etc.<sup>1</sup> It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātor*, according to Rule XXXIII.<sup>2</sup>

EXERCISE XIV.

I. Vocabulary.

Altūs, ū, ūm,	<i>high, lofty.</i>
Clārūs, ā, ūm,	<i>distinguished, renowned.</i>
Intēr, prep. with acc.	<i>among, in the midst of.</i>
Mons, montīs, m.	<i>mountain.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Orātōr clarus.
2. Orātōr clārīor.<sup>3</sup>
3. Orātōr clārissimus.
4. Oratōres clari.
5. Oratōres clārīores.<sup>3</sup>
6. Ora-

<sup>1</sup> Decline through all the cases of both numbers.

<sup>2</sup> Give the Rule.

<sup>3</sup> Declined like *tristior*, 152. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

tōres clarissīmi. 7. Beāta vita. 8. Beatior vita. 9. Beatiſsīma vita. 10. Donum gratum. 11. Donum gratius. 12. Donum gratissimum. 13. Dona grata. 14. Dona gratiōra. 15. Dona gratissīma. 16. Milītes fortissīmi. 17. Liber utilis. 18. Libri utiliōres. 19. Libris utilissimis. 20. Mons altus. 21. Montes altiōres.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life. 9. Useful lives. 10. More useful lives. 11. The most useful lives. 12. A pleasing song. 13. A more pleasing song. 14. The most pleasing song.

## NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

### I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS:<sup>1</sup> *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS:<sup>1</sup> *primus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES:<sup>1</sup> *singūli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

### 174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. ūnūs, unā, unūm,	primūs, <i>first</i> ,	singūli, <i>one by one</i> .
2. duō, duae, duō,	secundūs, <i>second</i> ,	bini, <i>two by two</i> .
3. trēs, triā,	tertius, <i>third</i> ,	terni (trīni).
4. quattuor,	quartūs, <i>fourth</i> ,	quāterni.
5. quinquē,	quintūs, <i>fifth</i> ,	quini.
6. sex,	sextūs,	seni.

<sup>1</sup> Cardinals denote simply the number of objects: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two. Ordinals denote the place of an object in a series: *primus*, first; *secundus*.

7. septēm,	septīmūs,	septēnī.
8. octō,	octāvūs,	octōnī.
9. nōvēm,	nōnūs,	nōvēnī.
10. dēcēm,	dēcīmūs,	dēnī.
11. undēcīm,	undēcīmūs,	undēnī.
12. duōdēcīm,	duōdēcīmūs,	duōdēnī.
13. trēdēcīm, or dēcēm ēt trēs,	tertiūs dēcīmūs,	ternī dēnī.
20. vīgintī,	vicēsīmūs,	vicēnī.
21. { vīgintī ūnūs,	vicēsīmūs primūs,	vicēnī singūli.
{ ūnūs ēt vīgintī,	ūnūs ēt vicēsīmūs,	singūli ēt vicēnī.
30. trīgintā,	tricēsīmūs,	tricēnī.
40. quadrāgintā,	quadrāgēsīmūs,	quadrāgēnī.
50. quinquāgintā,	quinquāgēsīmūs,	quinquāgēnī.
100. centūm,	centēsīmūs,	centēnī.
200. dūcentī, ae, ā,	dūcentēsīmūs,	dūcēnī.
1000. millē,	millēsīmūs,	singulā milliā.

## DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

### 1. Cardinals.

175. On the declension of cardinals, observe,

1. That the units, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *tres*, are declined.
2. That the other units, all the tens, and *centum*, are indeclinable.
3. That the hundreds are declined.<sup>1</sup>
4. That *mille* is sometimes declined.<sup>2</sup>

176. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

### 1. Unus, one.

	Singular.			Plural.		
N. ūnūs,	ūnā,	ūnūm,	ūnī,	ūnae,	ūnā,	
G. unīūs,	unīūs,	unīūs,	unōrūm,	unārūm,	unōrūm,	
D. unī,	unī,	unīs,	unīs,	unīs,	unīs,	
A. unūm,	unām,	unūm,	unōs,	unās,	unā,	
V. unē,	unā,	unūm,				
A. unō,	unā,	unō;	unīs,	unīs,	unīs.	

second. *Distributives* denote the number of objects taken at a time: *singūli*, one by one; *binī*, two by two.

<sup>1</sup> These are declined like the plural of *bonus* (148); *ducentī*, *ae*, *a*, two hundred.

<sup>2</sup> Though only in the plural, and only when used substantively. It is then declined like the plural of *mare* (50); *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*.

2. Duo, *two*.

N. duō,	duae,	duō,	trēs, m. and f.	triā, n.
G. duōrūm,	duārum,	duōrūm,	triūm,	triūm,
D. duōbūs,	duābūs,	duōbūs,	tribūs,	tribūs,
A. duōs, duō,	duās,	duō,	trēs,	triā,
A. duōbūs,	duābūs,	duōbūs.	tribūs,	tribūs.

3. Tres, *three*.

## EXERCISE XV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Annūs, i, m.	year.
Classis, classis, f.	fleet.
Fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f.	fortitude, bravery.
Impēriūm, ii, n.	reign, power.
Nāvis, nāvis, f.	ship.
Proeliūm, ii, n.	battle.
Vīr, vīri, m.	man, hero.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Unus<sup>1</sup> liber. 2. Duo<sup>1</sup> libri. 3. Liber primus.<sup>1</sup> 4. Liber secundus. 5. Tres libri. 6. Tertius liber. 7. Tria bella. 8. Post tria bella. 9. Post tertium bellum. 10. Ante quartum bellum. 11. Quattuor<sup>2</sup> anni. 12. Post bellum quinque annōrum. 13. Decem<sup>2</sup> dies. 14. Decimus dies.<sup>3</sup> 15. Decem horae. 16. Decima hora. 17. Decem proelia. 18. Decimum proelium. 19. Hora diēi decimā.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Five friends. 2. Of five friends. 3. The fifth year. 4. The fifth day. 5. The fifth present. 6. With five presents. 7. Eight books. 8. With eight books. 9. The eighth book. 10. Before the eighth book. 11. The bravery of two soldiers. 12. By the bravery of two soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> Numeral adjectives agree with their nouns, like other adjectives.

<sup>2</sup> The indeclinable numeral adjectives (175, 2) may be used without change of form with nouns of any gender, and in any case.

<sup>3</sup> *Dies*, it will be remembered, is generally masculine.

# CHAPTER III.

## PRONOUNS.

182. The Pronoun is that part of speech which properly supplies the place of nouns : *ĕgo*, I ; *tu*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes :

1. Personal Pronouns : *tu*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns : *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns : *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns : *qui*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns : *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns : *aliquis*, some one.

### I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are *ĕgo*, I ; *tu*, thou ; *sui* (Nom. not used), of himself, herself, itself.

They are declined as follows :

#### SINGULAR.

N. <i>ĕgō</i>	<i>tū</i>	
G. <i>meī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>sui</i>
D. <i>mihi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
A. <i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē</i>
V.	<i>tū</i>	
A. <i>mē</i> ;	<i>tē</i> ;	<i>sē</i> ;

#### PLURAL.

N. <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
G. <i>nostrūm</i> }	<i>vestrūm</i> }	<i>sui</i>
G. <i>nostrī</i> }	<i>vestrī</i> }	
D. <i>nōbis</i> ,	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sibi</i>
A. <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>
V.	<i>vōs</i>	
A. <i>nōbis</i> .	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sē</i> .

1. **Substantive Pronouns.** — Personal pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

2. **Reflexive Pronoun.** — *Sui*, from its reflexive signification, of himself, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

## II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

meus, <i>my</i> ,	noster, <i>our</i> .
tuus, <i>thy, your</i> ,	vester, <i>your</i> .
suus, <i>his, her, its</i> ,	suus, <i>their</i> .

They are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions;<sup>1</sup> *meus, mea, meum*; *noster, nostra, nostrum*: but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine generally *mi*, sometimes *meus*.

## III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

*Hic, ille, iste, ipse, is, idem.*

They are declined as follows:

*Hic, this.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hic	haec	hōc	hi	hae	haec
G. hujūs	hujūs	hujūs	hōrūm	hārūm	hōrūm
D. huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
A. hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
V.					
A. hōc	hāc	hōc;	his	his	his.

*Illē, he or that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. illē	illā	illūd	illi	illae	illā
G. illiūs	illiūs	illiūs	illōrūm	illārūm	illōrūm
D. illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
A. illūm	illām	illūd	illōs	illās	illā
V.					
A. illō	illā	illō;	illis	illis	illis.

<sup>1</sup> See *bonus* and *aeger*, 148.



Istě, *that*.

Istě, *that*, is declined like *illě*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

 Ipsě, *self, he*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ipsě	ipsā	ipsūm	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
G. ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsōrūm	ipsārūm	ipsōrūm
D. ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
A. ipsūm	ipsām	ipsūm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
V.					
A. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō;	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis.

 Is, *he, that*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is	eā	id	iī	eae	eā
G. ejūs	ejūs	ejūs	eōrūm	eārūm	eōrūm
D. ei	ei	ei	iis (eis)	iis (eis)	iis (eis)
A. eūm	eām	id	eōs	eās	eā
V.					
A. eō	eā	eō;	iis (eis)	iis (eis)	iis (eis).

 Idem, *the same*.

Idem, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdem* to *idēm*, and *iddem* to *idēm*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*; thus:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. idēm	eādēm	idēm	iidēm	eaedēm	eādēm
G. ejusdēm	ejusdēm	ejusdēm	eōrundēm	eārundēm	eōrundēm
D. eidēm	eidēm	eidēm	iisdēm	iisdēm	iisdēm
A. eundēm	eandēm	idēm	eōsdēm	eāsdēm	eādēm
V.					
A. eōdēm	eādēm	eōdēm;	iisdēm	iisdēm	iisdēm.

## IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
G. <i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>quorum</i>	<i>quarum</i>	<i>quorum</i>
D. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
A. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quos</i>	<i>quas</i>	<i>quae</i>
V.					
A. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i> ;	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i> .

## V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

*Quis* and *qui*, with their compounds.

*Quis* (who, which, what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>quis</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
G. <i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>quorum</i>	<i>quarum</i>	<i>quorum</i>
D. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
A. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quos</i>	<i>quas</i>	<i>quae</i>
V.					
A. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i> ;	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i> .

*Qui* (which, what?) is generally used adjectively, and is declined like the *relative qui*.

## VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are

*Quis* and *qui*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*.<sup>1</sup>

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. *The Indefinites:*

<i>aliquis</i> ,	<i>aliqua</i> ,	<i>aliquid</i>	or <i>aliquod</i> ,	<i>some, some one.</i>
<i>quispiam</i> ,	<i>quaepiam</i> ,	<i>quidpiam</i>	or <i>quodpiam</i> ,	<i>some, some one.</i>
<i>quidam</i> ,	<i>quaedam</i> ,	<i>quiddam</i>	or <i>quoddam</i> ,	<i>certain, certain one.</i>
<i>quisquam</i> ,		<i>quidquam</i> ,		<i>any one.</i>

<sup>1</sup> But after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*, the Feminine Singular and the Neuter Plural have *quae* or *qua*; *si quae*, *si qua*. In like manner, *aliquis* has *aliqua* in the Feminine Singular and in the Neuter Plural.

## II. The General Indefinites :

quisque,	quaeque,	quidque	or quodque,	every, every one.
quivis,	quaevis,	quidvis	or quodvis,	any one you please.
quilibet,	quaelibet,	quidlibet	or quodlibet,	any one you please.

### EXERCISE XVI.

#### I. Vocabulary.

Consiliūm, ii, n.	design, plan.
Epistolā, ae, f.	letter.
Ex, prep. with abl.	from.
Insulā, ae, f.	island.
Pārens, parentis, m. and f.	parent.
Pars, partis, f.	part, portion.
Pātriā, ae, f.	country, native country.
Praeclārūs, ā, ūm,	distinguished.
Prātūm, i, n.	meadow.
Prō, prep. with abl.	for, in behalf of.
Quivis, quaevis, quodvis,	whoever, whatever.

#### II. Translate into English.

1. Mihi, tibi, sibi. 2. Ad me,<sup>1</sup> ad te. 3. Contra nos, contra se. 4. Ante vos, ante nos. 5. Pro vobis.<sup>1</sup> 6. Meā<sup>2</sup> vitā. 7. Patriā tuā. 8. Pro patriā tuā.<sup>2</sup> 9. Contra patriam tuam. 10. Nostra consilia. 11. Nostris<sup>2</sup> consiliis. 12. Vestri patres. 13. In nostrā patriā. 14. Hic<sup>2</sup> puer, hi puēri. 15. Haec corōnā, hae corōnae. 16. Hoc donum, haec dona. 17. Haec urbs praeclārā. 18. Ex hac vitā. 19. Illius libri. 20. In eā pugnā. 21. In eōdem prato. 22. Quae<sup>2</sup> urbs?

<sup>1</sup> See 184, 1. Substantive pronouns are used in the several cases like nouns, and are parsed by the same rules. See Rule XXXII. 432. Other pronouns are sometimes used as nouns, and parsed in the same way.

<sup>2</sup> The *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, and the *Interrogative* pronouns, in this exercise, are all used as *adjectives*, and agree with their nouns, like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. 438, p. 32. Hence *meā* is in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with *vitā*; *nostris*, in the Dative or Ablative Plural Neuter, to agree with *consiliis*; *hic*, in the Nominative Singular Masculine, to agree with *puer*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We, you. 2. You, me, himself. 3. For you, for me, for himself. 4. Of himself, of you. 5. Against you, against me. 6. My book, your book, his book. 7. My books, your books, his books. 8. Our parents, your parents, their parents. 9. This letter, that letter. 10. These letters, those letters. 11. This city, that city. 12. These cities, those cities. 13. After that victory. 14. The same words. 15. With the same words.

## CHAPTER IV.

## VERBS.

192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lêgit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS,—which admit a direct object of their action: *servum*<sup>1</sup> *verbêrat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS,—which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

## I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices:<sup>2</sup>

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acting or existing: *păter filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

<sup>1</sup> Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *beats*: *beats* (what?) *the slave*.

<sup>2</sup> *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice).

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE, — which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

## II. MOODS.

196. Moods<sup>1</sup> are either Definite or Indefinite:

I. The **Definite** or **Finite Moods** make up the Finite Verb; they are:

1. The **INDICATIVE MOOD**, — which either asserts something as a *fact*, or inquires after the fact: *lĕgit*, he is reading; *legitne*, is he reading?

2. The **SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD**, — which expresses, not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *can*, etc.: *lĕgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. The **IMPERATIVE MOOD**, — which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lĕge*, read thou.

II. The **Indefinite Moods** express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives; they are:

1. The **INFINITIVE**, — which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb, without any necessary reference to person or number: *legĕre*, to read.

2. The **GERUND**, — which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in *ING*: *amandī*, of loving; *amandī causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. The **SUPINE**, — which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *amātum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The **PARTICIPLE**, — which, like the English Participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and Future, — *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love: and two in the Passive, the Perfect and Future, — *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

### III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses:<sup>1</sup>

#### I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION:

1. Present: *amo*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving.
3. Future: *amābo*, I shall love.

#### II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:

1. Perfect: *amāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *amavēram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *amavēro*, I shall have loved.

### 198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. **Present Perfect and Historical Perfect.** — The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect*, or *Perfect Definite*; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect*, or *Perfect Indefinite*.

2. **Principal and Historical.** — Tenses are also distinguished as

1) *Principal*: — Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.

2) *Historical*: — Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. **Tenses Wanting.** — The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

### IV. NUMBERS.

199. There are two Numbers:<sup>2</sup> SINGULAR and PLURAL.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Tense* means *time*, and is employed to designate the *time* of an action or event.

<sup>2</sup> *Number* in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to number in nouns. See 37.

V. PERSONS.

200. There are three Persons:<sup>1</sup> FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
<b>āre,</b>	<b>ēre,</b>	<b>ĕre,</b>	<b>īre.</b>

202. **Principal Parts.** — Four forms of the verb—the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine<sup>2</sup>—are called, from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. **Entire Conjugation.** — In any regular verb.

1. The VERB-STEM may be found by dropping the Infinitive Ending: *amāre*; stem, *am*.

2. The PRINCIPAL PARTS may be formed from this stem by means of proper endings.

3. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of the verb through all its parts may be readily formed from these Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Person* in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to person in nouns. See 37.

<sup>2</sup> In the Active Voice, all these four forms are usually given as Principal Parts; but, in the Passive, only the first three.

<sup>3</sup> In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

## 204. Sum, I am.

*Sum* is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
sūm,	essē,	fuī,	—. <sup>1</sup>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sūm,	<i>I am,</i>	sūmūs,	<i>we are,</i>
ēs,	<i>thou art,<sup>2</sup></i>	estīs,	<i>you are,</i>
est,	<i>he is ;</i>	sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I was.*

ērām,	<i>I was,</i>	ērāmūs,	<i>we were,</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast,</i>	erātīs,	<i>you were,</i>
erāt,	<i>he was ;</i>	erant,	<i>they were.</i>

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be.*

ērō,	<i>I shall be,</i>	ērīmūs,	<i>we shall be,</i>
erīs,	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	erītīs,	<i>you will be,</i>
erīt,	<i>he will be ;</i>	erunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I have been, was.*

fuī,	<i>I have been,</i>	fulmūs,	<i>we have been,</i>
fuistī,	<i>thou hast been,</i>	fuistīs,	<i>you have been,</i>
fuīt,	<i>he has been ;</i>	fuērunt, } fuērē,	<i>they have been.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been.*

fuērām,	<i>I had been,</i>	fuērāmūs,	<i>we had been,</i>
fuērās,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	fuērātīs,	<i>you had been,</i>
fuērāt,	<i>he had been ;</i>	fuērant,	<i>they had been.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been.*

fuērō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you will have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he will have been ;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The Supine is wanting in this verb.

<sup>2</sup> Or, *you are*: *thou is* confined mostly to solemn discourse: in ordinary English, *you are* is used both in the singular and in the plural.



# SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can be.*<sup>1</sup>

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sĭm,	<i>I may be,</i>	sĭmŭs,	<i>ye may be,</i>
sĭs,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>	sĭtĭs,	<i>you may be,</i>
sĭt,	<i>he may be ;</i>	sĭnt,	<i>they may be.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be.*

essĕm,	<i>I might be,</i>	essĕmŭs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essĕs,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>	essĕtĭs,	<i>you might be,</i>
essĕt,	<i>he might be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I may or can have been.*

fuĕrĭm,	<i>I may have been,</i>	fuĕrĭmŭs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuĕrĭs,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fuĕrĭtĭs,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuĕrĭt,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuĕrint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been.*

fuissĕm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	fuissĕmŭs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissĕs,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>	fuissĕtĭs,	<i>you might have been,</i>
fuissĕt,	<i>he might have been ;</i>	fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ĕs,	<i>be thou,</i>	estĕ,	<i>be ye.</i>
FUT. estĕ,	<i>thou shalt be,</i> <sup>2</sup>	estĕtĕ,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estĕ,	<i>he shall be ;</i>	suntĕ,	<i>they shall be.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. essĕ,	<i>to be.</i>	FUT. fŭtŭrŭs, <sup>3</sup>	<i>about to be.</i>
PERF. fuissĕ,	<i>to have been.</i>		
FUT. fŭtŭrŭs <sup>3</sup> essĕ,	<i>to be about to be.</i>		

<sup>1</sup> The Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*: *sit, he may be, may he be, let him be.*

<sup>2</sup> The Future is sometimes best rendered like the Present, or with *let*: *esto, thou shalt be, or be thou ; sunt, they shall be, or let them be.*

<sup>3</sup> *Futŭrus* is declined like *bonus* ; N. *futŭrus, a, um*, G. *futŭri, ae, i* ; so in the Infinitive : *futŭrus, a, um esse.*

### RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite<sup>1</sup> Verb agrees with its Subject<sup>2</sup> in NUMBER and PERSON :

*Deus mundum aedificāvit,*<sup>3</sup> *God made the world.* Cic. *Ego rēges ejēci, vos tȳrannos intrōdūcītis, I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES.—These agree with the subject, according to Rule XXXIII. page 32 :

*Thebāni accusāti sunt,*<sup>4</sup> *The Thebans were accused.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted —

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, or can be readily supplied from the context :

*Discipūlos mōneo,*<sup>5</sup> *ut stūdia āment,*<sup>6</sup> *I instruct pupils to love<sup>6</sup> their studies.* Quint.

<sup>1</sup> See 196, I.

<sup>2</sup> With the Active Voice of a Transitive Verb, the *Subject* represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *performs* the action ; as, *Deus* in the first example, *God made* : but, with the Passive Voice, it represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *receives* the action, i.e. *is acted upon*, as, *Thebāni*, 460, 1 : *the Thebans were accused*.

<sup>3</sup> *Aedificāvit* is in the Third Person and in the Singular Number, because its subject *deus* is in that person and number. *Ejēci* is in the First Person Singular, to agree with its subject *ego* ; and *introducītis* in the Second Person Plural, to agree with its subject *vos*.

<sup>4</sup> The verb *accusāti sunt* is in the Third Person Plural, to agree with its subject *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXV. ; but the participle *accusāti*, which is one element of the verb, is in the Nominative Plural Masculine, to agree with its noun *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXIII.

<sup>5</sup> The subject of *moneo* is *ego*. It is omitted, because it is a Personal Pronoun, and is, accordingly, fully implied in the verb, as the ending *eo* shows, as we shall soon see, that the subject cannot be *you*, *he*, or *they*, but must be *I*.

*Ut—ament* means literally *that they may love*. The subject of *ament* is the pronoun *ii*, *they*, referring to *discipūlos*. It is omitted, partly because it is implied in the ending *ent*, but more especially because it can be so readily supplied from *discipūlos*, which shows *who* are here meant by *they*.

<sup>6</sup> *To love*, or, more literally, *that they may love*.

The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

# I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING VERBS.

In parsing a verb,

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (193), name the Conjugation to which it belongs, give the Present Indicative Active and the Stem (203).
2. Give the Principal Parts (202), and inflect the tense in which the given form is found.<sup>1</sup>
3. Give the voice, mood, tense, number, and person.
4. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

## MODELS FOR PARSING THE VERB SUM.

### 1. *Sum with Subject.*

Nōs<sup>2</sup> ērāmūs,      *We were.*

*Erāmūs* is an intransitive irregular<sup>3</sup> verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*, — <sup>4</sup>. Inflection of tense (Imperfect Indicative): *eram, eras, erat, erāmus, erātis, erant*. The form *erāmus* is found in the Indicative mood, Imperfect tense, First person, Plural number, and agrees with its subject *nos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

### 2. *Sum without Subject.*<sup>5</sup>

Fui, *I have been.*

*Fui* is an intransitive irregular verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*. Inflection of tense (Perfect Indicative): *fui, fuisti*,

<sup>1</sup> That is, if the form occurs in a given tense of the Indicative, give the several forms for the different persons and numbers in that tense and mood. The teacher may also find it convenient to require the synopsis of the mood till the required tense is found.

<sup>2</sup> *Nos* is the Subject. With an intransitive verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing) who is in the condition, or state, denoted by the verb.

<sup>3</sup> Hence it does not belong to either of the regular conjugations.

<sup>4</sup> The *Supine* is wanting.

<sup>5</sup> That is, without any subject expressed.

*fuit* ; *fuimus*, *fuistis*, *fuērunt*, or *fuēre*. The form *fui* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *First* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with its subject *ego* omitted (though fully implied<sup>1</sup> in the ending *i* of *fui*), according to Rule XXXV.

## EXERCISE XVII.

### I. *Translate into English.*

1. Sum, sumus, sunt.<sup>2</sup> 2. Es, est, estis. 3. Eram, erāmus.<sup>2</sup> 4. Erat, erant. 5. Eris, eritis.<sup>2</sup> 6. Erit, erunt. 7. Fui, fuēram, fuēro. 8. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 9. Fuisti, fuistis. 10. Fuit, fuērunt. 11. Fuērat, fuērant. 12. Fuērit, fuērint. 13. Sim, simus. 14. Sit, sint. 15. Essem, essēmus. 16. Esset, essent. 17. Fuērim, fuissem. 18. Fuerimus, fuissēmus. 19. Fuērit, fuērint. 20. Fuisset, fuissent. 21. Es, este.

### II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He<sup>3</sup> is, they<sup>3</sup> are. 2. He has been, they have been. 3. He will be, they will be. 4. He was, they were. 5. He will have been, they will have been. 6. He had been, they had been. 7. I<sup>3</sup> was, you were. 8. We have been, you have been. 9. You may be, they may be. 10. He would be, they would be. 11. I might have been, we might have been.

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XXXV., 2, together with the note.

<sup>2</sup> In parsing the forms contained in this Exercise, observe the second Model just given. If the verb is of the first person, supply, as subject, the personal pronoun (184) of the first person ; i.e., *ego* for the singular, and *nos* for the plural. If the verb is of the second person, supply the personal pronoun of the second person ; i.e., *tu* for the singular, and *vos* for the plural. If the verb is of the third person, supply the demonstrative pronoun *is* (186) for the singular, and *ii* for the plural, as the personal pronoun *sui* is not used in the Nominative : hence, *ego sum*, *nos sumus*, *ii sunt*.

<sup>3</sup> The English pronouns in this Exercise are not to be rendered by the corresponding Latin pronouns, as the latter may be implied in the ending of the verb, as in the Latin forms above : hence, *he is* = *est*.

SUM WITH SUBJECT AND ADJECTIVE.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite<sup>1</sup> Verb is put in the Nominative:

*Servius*<sup>2</sup> *regnāvit*, *Servius reigned*. Liv. *Pātent portae*, *The gates are open*. Cic. *Rex vicit*, *The king conquered*. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

*Ego rēges ejēci*, *I have banished kings*. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 460, 2; page 54.

MODEL FOR PARSING SUBJECTS.

*Rex vīcīt*, *The king conquered*.

*Rex* is a noun (31) of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40); of Class I., as it has a nominative ending *s* (*x*=*g-s*, of which *s* is the ending, as *g* belongs to the stem. See 50, I. note); STEM, *reg-*. Singular: *rex*, *regis*, *regi*, *regem*, *rex*, *rege*. Plural: *reges*, *regum*, *regibus*, *reges*, *reges*, *regibus*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 35, I. 1.; is in the Nominative Singular; and is the subject of *vīcīt*, according to Rule III.: "The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative."

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. *Vocabulary*.

<i>Cătō</i> , <i>Cătōnis</i> , <i>m</i> .	<i>Cato</i> , a distinguished Roman.
<i>Crūdūs</i> , <i>ă</i> , <i>ŭm</i> ,	<i>unripe</i> .
<i>Diligens</i> , <i>Diligentīs</i> ,	<i>diligent</i> .
<i>Discipulūs</i> , <i>ī</i> , <i>m</i> .	<i>pupil</i> .

<sup>1</sup> See 196, I.

<sup>2</sup> In these examples, the subjects are *Servius*, *portae*, and *rex*.

Germāniā, ac, <i>f.</i>	<i>Germany.</i>
Jūcundūs, ā, ūm.	<i>pleasant, delightful.</i>
Laudābilis, ē.	<i>praiseworthy, laudable.</i>
Mātūrūs, ā, ūm.	<i>ripe.</i>
Pōmūm, ī, n.	<i>fruit.</i>

## II. Translate into English.

1. Pax<sup>1</sup> jucunda<sup>2</sup> est.<sup>3</sup> 2. Pax jucunda erit. 3. Vita brevis est. 4. Cato bonus fuit. 5. Cives boni fuērunt. 6. Virtus laudabilis est. 7. Libri utiles sunt. 8. Illi libri utiles erunt. 9. Ille liber utilis fuērat. 10. Utilis<sup>4</sup> fuisti. 11. Utiles fuistis. 12. Germania fertilis est. 13. Agri fertiles fuērunt. 14. Pomum crudum est. 15. Poma cruda sunt. 16. Poma matūra erunt. 17. Miles fortis est. 18. Milites fortes sunt.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. The pupil is diligent.<sup>5</sup> 2. The pupils were diligent. 3. The boy is good. 4. He will be happy. 5. Good boys are happy. 6. You may be happy. 7. We might have been happy. 8. This soldier will be useful. 9. These soldiers have been useful. 10. Brave soldiers are useful. 11. You will be useful. 12. Let us be useful.

<sup>1</sup> *Pax* is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the Nominative, according to Rule III.

<sup>2</sup> *Jucunda* is an adjective in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with its noun *pax*, according to Rule XXXIII., page 32.

<sup>3</sup> *Est* is a verb in the Indicative mood, Present tense, Third person, Singular number, and agrees with its subject *pax*, according to Rule XXXV., page 54.

<sup>4</sup> *Utilis* agrees with the omitted subject *tu*, implied in the ending of the verb.

<sup>5</sup> In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises. He will observe that the subject stands first, and the verb last. But sometimes the verb precedes one or more words in the sentence. Thus the sentence, *Pax jucunda est*, might be *Pax est jucunda*.

SUM WITH PREDICATE NOUN.

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun<sup>1</sup> denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in CASE :

*Ego sum nuntius,*<sup>1</sup> *I am a messenger.* Liv. *Servius rex est declārātus, Servius was declared king.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING PREDICATE NOUNS.

*Egō sūm nuntiūs, I am a messenger.*

*Nuntius* is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has i in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *nunti*. Singular; *nuntius, nuntii, nuntio, nuntium, nuntie, nuntio*. Plural; *nuntii, nuntiōrum nuntiis, nuntios, nuntii, nuntiis*. It is of the Masculine Gender by 45; is in the Nominative Singular, and, as a Predicate Noun, agrees in case with its subject *ego*, according to Rule I.: "A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE."

346. I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

*Miltiādes accūsātus est, Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. AN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

*Quis non paupertātem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun,

---

<sup>1</sup> Every sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject.

Thus, in the first example under the Rule, *ego, I*, is the *subject*, and *sum nuntius* is the *predicate*. When the predicate thus consists of a *noun* with the verb *sum*, or of a *noun* with a passive verb, the *noun* thus used is called a *predicate noun*. Accordingly, *nuntius* in the first example, and *rex* in the second, are *predicate nouns*.

adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne*, Is he writing ?  
*Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit*,  
 Is he not writing ?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit*, Is he  
 writing ?

## EXERCISE XIX.

### I. Vocabulary.

Ancūs, i, m.	Ancus, Roman king.
Condītōr, condītōris, m.	founder.
Dēmōsthēnēs, is, m.	Demosthenes, Athenian orator.
Ebriētās, ebriētātis, f.	drunkenness.
Graecūs, ű, űm,	Greek, Grecian.
Graecus, i, m.	Greek, a Greek.
Insāniā, ae, f.	insanity, madness.
Inventōr, inventōris, m.	inventor.
Mātēr, mātēris, f.	mother.
Mundūs, i, m.	world, universe.
Nonnē, interrog. part.	expects answer yes.
Nūm, interrog. part.	expects answer no.
Philōsōphiā, ae, f.	philosophy.
Rōmā, ae, f.	Rōme.
Rōmānūs, ű, űm,	Roman.
Rōmānūs, i, m.	Roman, a Roman.
Rōmūlūs, i, m.	Romulus, the founder of Rome.
Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m.	Scipio, Roman general.

### II. Translate into English.<sup>1\*</sup>

- Ancus<sup>2</sup> fuit<sup>3</sup> rex<sup>4</sup>.
- Nonne<sup>5</sup> Romūlus rex fuērat ?
- Romūlus rex fuērat.
- Quis condītōr Romae<sup>6</sup> fuit ?
- Romūlus condītōr Romae fuit.
- Ebriētās est insania.
- Patria<sup>7</sup> est parens omnium nostrum.<sup>8</sup>
- Graeci<sup>7</sup> multā  
rum artium<sup>8</sup> inventōres erant.
- Demosthēnes orātor fuit.

\* For Notes to the references on this page, see page 61.



10. Num hic puer orātor erit? 11. Ille puer orātor sit.  
12. Philosophia est mater artium. 13. Cicēro clarissim<sup>9</sup>  
orātor fuit. 14. Cantus luscinae jucundissim<sup>9</sup> est.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who<sup>10</sup> was the king? <sup>11</sup> 2. Was not<sup>12</sup> Romulus king? <sup>11</sup>  
3. Romulus was king. 4. Who was the leader of the  
Romans? 5. Was not<sup>12</sup> Scipio the leader of the Romans?  
6. Scipio was the leader of the Romans. 7. Your brother  
is an orator. 8. This boy is my brother. 9. These boys  
will be diligent pupils. 10. These pupils will be diligent.

<sup>1</sup> In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 143, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule III. page 57.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule XXXV. page 54. The verb sometimes precedes the Predicate Noun, as in this sentence; and sometimes follows it, as in several of the following sentences.

<sup>4</sup> *Rex* is a *Predicate Noun*, denoting the same person as its subject *Ancus*, and is therefore in the Nominative, to agree with that subject in *case*, according to Rule I. page 59.

<sup>5</sup> See 346, II. 1 above.

<sup>6</sup> Genitive, according to Rule XVI. page 22.

<sup>7</sup> In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What parts of speech do you find? What cases? What mood, tense, number, and person?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

<sup>8</sup> *Artium* depends upon *inventōres*.

<sup>9</sup> In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *clarissim<sup>9</sup>* and *jucundissim<sup>9</sup>* (162)?

<sup>10</sup> See 188.

<sup>11</sup> See Rule I.

<sup>12</sup> *Nonne*. See 346 II. 1.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amo, *I love.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
amō,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I love, am loving, do love.*

## SINGULAR.

amō,	<i>I love,</i>
amās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>
amāt,	<i>he loves ;</i>

## PLURAL.

amāmūs,	<i>we love,</i>
amātis,	<i>you love,</i>
amant,	<i>they love.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love.*

amābam,	<i>I was loving,</i>
amābas,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>
amābat,	<i>he was loving ;</i>

amābāmūs,	<i>we were loving,</i>
amābātis,	<i>you were loving,</i>
amābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will love.*

amābō,	<i>I shall love,</i>
amābis,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>
amābit,	<i>he will love ;</i>

amābimūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
amābitis,	<i>you will love,</i>
amābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I loved, have loved.*

amāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i>
amāvisti,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>
amāvit,	<i>he has loved ;</i>

amāvimūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
amāvistis,	<i>you have loved,</i>
amāverunt, ēre,	<i>they have loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved.*

amāverām,	<i>I had loved,</i>
amāverās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>
amāverāt,	<i>he had loved ;</i>

amāverāmūs,	<i>we had loved,</i>
amāverātis,	<i>you had loved,</i>
amāverant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have loved.*

amāverō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
amāveris,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>
amāverit,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>

amāverimūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
amāveritis,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
amāverint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

# SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can love.*

### SINGULAR.

<b>āmēm,</b>	<i>I may love,</i>
<b>āmēs,</b>	<i>thou mayst love,</i>
<b>āmēt,</b>	<i>he may love;</i>

### PLURAL.

<b>āmēmūs,</b>	<i>we may love,</i>
<b>āmētīs,</b>	<i>you may love,</i>
<b>āment,</b>	<i>they may love.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should love.*

<b>āmārēm,</b>	<i>I might love,</i>
<b>āmārēs,</b>	<i>thou mightst love,</i>
<b>āmārēt,</b>	<i>he might love;</i>

<b>āmārēmūs,</b>	<i>we might love,</i>
<b>āmārētīs,</b>	<i>you might love,</i>
<b>āmārent,</b>	<i>they might love.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I may or can have loved.*

<b>āmāvērīm,</b>	<i>I may have loved,</i>
<b>āmāvērīs,</b>	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>
<b>āmāvērīt,</b>	<i>he may have loved;</i>

<b>āmāvērīmūs,</b>	<i>we may have loved,</i>
<b>āmāvērītīs,</b>	<i>you may have loved,</i>
<b>āmāvērīnt,</b>	<i>they may have loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have loved.*

<b>āmāvissēm,</b>	<i>I might have loved,</i>
<b>āmāvissēs,</b>	<i>thou mightst have loved,</i>
<b>āmāvissēt,</b>	<i>he might have loved;</i>

<b>āmāvissēmūs,</b>	<i>we might have loved,</i>
<b>āmāvissētīs,</b>	<i>you might have loved,</i>
<b>āmāvissent,</b>	<i>they might have loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

<b>PRES. āmā,</b>	<i>love<sup>2</sup> thou;</i>
<b>FUT. āmātō,</b>	<i>thou shalt love,</i>
<b>āmātō,</b>	<i>he shall love;</i>

<b>āmātē,</b>	<i>love ye.</i>
<b>āmātōtē,</b>	<i>ye shall love,</i>
<b>āmantō,</b>	<i>they shall love.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<b>PRES. āmārē,</b>	<i>to love.</i>
<b>PERF. āmāvissē,</b>	<i>to have loved.</i>
<b>FUT. āmātūrūs<sup>1</sup> essē,</b>	<i>to be about to love.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

<b>PRES. āmans,<sup>2</sup></b>	<i>loving.</i>
<b>FUT. āmātūrūs,<sup>1</sup></b>	<i>about to love.</i>

## GERUND.

<b>Gen. āmandī,</b>	<i>of loving,</i>
<b>Dat. āmandō,</b>	<i>for loving,</i>
<b>Acc. āmandūm,</b>	<i>loving,</i>
<b>Abl. āmandō,</b>	<i>by loving.</i>

## SUPINE.

<b>Acc. āmātūm,</b>	<i>to love,</i>
<b>Abl. āmātū,</b>	<i>to love, be loved,</i>

<sup>1</sup> Decline like *bonus*, 148.

<sup>2</sup> Decline like *prudens*, 153.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
ămôr,	ămări,	ămătūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am loved.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ămôr	ămămūr
ămăris, or rē	ămămīni
ămătūr;	ămantūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was loved.*

ămăbăr	ămăbămūr
ămăbaris, or rē	ămăbămīni
ămăbatūr;	ămăbantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be loved.*

ămăbôr	ămăbīmūr
ămăbêris, or rē	ămăbīmīni
ămăbitūr;	ămăbuntūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was loved.*

ămătūs sūm <sup>1</sup>	ămătī sūmūs
ămătūs ēs	ămătī estīs
ămătūs est;	ămătī sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.*

ămătūs ărăm <sup>1</sup>	ămătī ărămūs
ămătūs ărās	ămătī ărătīs
ămătūs ărăt;	ămătī ărant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been loved.*

ămătūs ărō <sup>1</sup>	ămătī ărīmūs
ămătūs ărīs	ămătī ărītīs
ămătūs ărīt;	ămătī ărunt.

<sup>1</sup> *Fui, fuisti, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sum, es, etc.*; thus *amātus fui* for *amātus sum*. So *fuëram, fuëras, etc.*, for *ëram, ëras, etc.*; also *fuëro, fuëris, etc.*, for *ëro, ëris, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be loved.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
āmēr	āmēmūr
āmērīs, or rē	āmēmīni
āmētūr;	āmentūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be loved.*

āmārēr	āmārēmūr
āmārērīs, or rē	āmārēmīni
āmārētūr;	āmārentūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been loved.*

āmātūs sim <sup>1</sup>	āmāti simūs
āmātūs sis	āmāti sitīs
āmātūs sīt;	āmāti sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been loved.*

āmātūs essēm <sup>1</sup>	āmāti essēmūs
āmātūs essēs	āmāti essētīs
āmātūs essēt;	āmāti essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. āmārē, be thou loved;	āmāmīni, be ye loved.
FUT. āmātōr, thou shalt be loved;	
āmātōr, he shall be loved;	āmantōr, they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES āmāri, to be loved.	
PERF. āmātūs essē, to have been loved.	PERF. āmātūs, having been loved.
FUT. āmātūm iri, to be about to be loved.	FUT. āmandūs, to be loved.

<sup>1</sup> *Fuërim, fuëris, etc., are sometimes used for sim, sis, etc. So also fuisset, fuisses, etc., for essem, esses, etc.*

## MODELS FOR PARSING REGULAR VERBS.

1. *With Subject.*

Vos laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

*Laudavistis* is a transitive verb (192, 193) of the First Conjugation (201), from *laudo*; STEM, *laud*. Principal Parts: *laudo, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum*. Inflection of Tense: *laudāvi, laudavisti, laudāvit, laudavimus, laudavistis, laudavērunt, or laudavēre*. The form *laudavistis* is found in the Active voice, Indicative mood, Perfect tense, Second person, Plural number, and agrees with its subject *vos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Without Subject.*

Laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

This is parsed like *laudavistis*, above, except that it agrees with *vos*, implied in the ending *istis*; while *laudavistis*, above, agrees with *vos* expressed.

## FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Vitūperō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to blame.
Laudō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to praise.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amo, amābam, amābo.<sup>1</sup> 2. Amas, amābas, amābis.  
3. Amat, amant.<sup>1</sup> 4. Amābat, amābant. 5. Amābit, amā-

<sup>1</sup> The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe in what they are *alike*, and in what they are *unlike*. Thus *amo, amābam, amābo*, have the letters *am*

bunt.<sup>1</sup> 6. Amāmus, amabāmus, amabīmus. 7. Amāvi, amavēram, amavēro. 8. Amāvit, amavērat, amavērit. 9. Amāvi, amavīmus. 10. Amavēram, amāverāmus. 11. Amavēro, amaverīmus. 12. Amem, amārem, amavērim, amavissem. 13. Amēmus, amarēmus, amaverīmus, amāvissēmus. 14. Amet, ament. 15. Amāret, amārent. 16. Amavērit, amavērint. 17. Amavisset, amavissent. 18. Ama, amāte, amatōte. 19. Amāto, amanto.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I praise, I was praising, I will praise. 2. He praises, they praise. 3. He will praise, they will praise. 4. He was praising, they were praising. 5. You were praising, you will praise, you praise. 6. He has loved, he had loved, he will have loved. 7. I have praised, I had praised, I shall have praised. 8. He may love, they may love. 9. Let him praise, let them praise. 10. He would blame, they would blame. 11. I should have praised, we should have praised. 12. Praise thou, praise ye.

## FIRST CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### EXERCISE XXI.

#### I. *Translate into English.*

1. Amor, amābar, amābor. 2. Amāris, amabāris, amabēris. 3. Amātur, amantur. 4. Amabātur, amabantur.

(the stem, 203) in common; but they differ from each other in the endings, —o, ābam, ābo. In the forms *amat*, *amant*, there is a still closer resemblance: not only is the stem *am* common to both, but the endings have the letters *at* in common; or, in other words, the plural ending *ant* differs from the singular ending *at* only in inserting *n*: AT, ANT.

<sup>1</sup> Here the pupil will observe that the plural ending *ābunt* differs from the singular ending *ābit*, not only in inserting *n* before *t*, but also in changing *i* into *u*: ABIT, ABUNT.

5. Amabitur, amabuntur. 6. Amāmur, amabāmur, amabīmur. 7. Amātus<sup>1</sup> sum, amātus eram, amātus ero. 8. Amātus es, amātus eras, amātus eris. 9. Amātus est, amāti<sup>1</sup> sunt. 10. Amātus erat, amāti erant. 11. Amātus erit, amāti erunt. 12. Amer, amārer, amātus sim, amātus essem. 13. Amēmur, amarēmur, amāti simus, amāti essēmus. 14. Amētur, amentur. 15. Amarētur, amarentur. 16. Amātus sit, amāti sint. 17. Amātus esset, amāti essent. 18. Amātor, amator.

## II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is praised, they are praised. 2. He was praised, they were praised. 3. He will be praised, they will be praised. 4. I am blamed, I was blamed, I shall be blamed. 5. You are loved, you are praised. 6. You were loved, you were praised. 7. You will be loved, you will be praised. 8. I have been blamed, you have been praised. 9. I had been blamed, you had been praised. 10. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised. 11. You may be blamed, you might be blamed. 12. He would have been blamed, they would have been praised. 13. Let him be praised, let them be praised. 14. Be thou praised, be ye praised.

---

<sup>1</sup> The learner will observe, that, when the verb and the subject (expressed or implied) are in the Singular, the participle (*amātus*), which forms one element of the verb, is also in the Singular; and that, when the verb and the subject are in the Plural, the participle (*amāti*) is also in the Plural.

The form of the participle also varies with the *gender* of the subject, as well as with its *number*. Thus, if the subject is Masculine, the participle will be *amātus* in the Singular, and *amāti* in the Plural; if Feminine, *amāta* in the Singular, and *amātae* in the Plural; and, if Neuter, *amātum* in the Singular, and *amāta* in the Plural. Thus the participle in the compound tenses (i.e., in those which are made up of the participle and the auxiliary *sum*) agrees with the subject in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, like an adjective, according to Rule XXXV. 1, note.



FIRST CONJUGATION—BOTH VOICES.

EXERCISE XXII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Laudo, laudor.<sup>1</sup> 2. Laudābo, laudābor.<sup>2</sup> 3. Laudābam, laudābar.<sup>2</sup> 4. Laudem, lauder. 5. Laudārem, laudārer.<sup>2</sup> 6. Laudat, laudatur.<sup>1</sup> 7. Amābat, amabātur. 8. Amābit, amabītur. 9. Amet, amētur. 10. Amāret, amarētur. 11. Laudārent, laudarentur. 12. Ament, amentur. 13. Laudant, laudantur. 14. Amābant, amabantur. 15. Laudābunt, laudabuntur. 16. Amāvit, amātus est. 17. Laudavērat, laudātus erat. 18. Amavērit, amātus erit. 19. Lauda, laudāre. 20. Amāto, amātor. 21. Laudanto, laudantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He blames, he is blamed. 2. I was praising, I was praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. He

<sup>1</sup> In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Voices,—the Active and the Passive,—and observe the difference between them. The Passive *laudor* differs from the Active *laudo* only in adding *r*; the Passive *laudābar* differs from the Active *laudābam* only in taking *r* in place of *m*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the first person of the Passive is formed from the first person of the Active by simply adding *r*; or, if the Active ends in *m*, by substituting *r* for *m*. Again: the Passive *laudātur* differs from the Active *laudat* only in adding *ur*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the third person of the Passive is formed from the third person of the Active by simply adding *ur*.

<sup>2</sup> Where must we look to find the meaning of these endings,—in the Vocabulary, or in the Grammar? and where to find the general meaning of the verb? See Suggestion II. To find the meaning of the verb to which *laudābor* belongs, for what form must we look in the Vocabulary? See Suggestion VII.

will blame, he will be blamed. 5. They will praise, they will be praised. 6. We blame, we are blamed. 7. He has praised, he has been praised. 8. They have blamed, they have been blamed. 9. He had praised, he had been praised. 10. They had blamed, they had been blamed. 11. He may praise, he may be praised. 12. He would blame, he would be blamed. 13. They may praise, they may be praised.

## FIRST CONJUGATION — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.<sup>1</sup>

### DIRECT OBJECT.

#### RULE V. — Direct Object.

379. The Direct Object<sup>2</sup> of an action is put in the Accusative.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*<sup>3</sup> Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

---

<sup>1</sup> It is thought advisable that the pupil should now commence a review of the grammatical forms which he has already learned. Accordingly, this Exercise will involve nouns of the First and of the Second Declension. The pupil should therefore carefully review those Declensions (42, 45). In connection with the subsequent Exercises, it is expected that the other Declensions and the other Grammatical forms will be reviewed in order, as will be indicated in the respective headings which precede the several Exercises.

<sup>2</sup> The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing, on which the action is *directly* exerted; as, *sālūtem*, safety, in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i.e. the object produced by it; as, *mundum*, world, in the first example, — *made the world*.

<sup>3</sup> In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made*; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus *mundum* precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *sālūtem* precedes *dēfendite*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem publicam* follows *libēra*.

MODEL FOR PARSING DIRECT OBJECTS.

*Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world.*

*Mundum* is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *mund*. Singular: *mundus, mundi, mundo, mundum, munde, mundo*. Plural: *mundi, mundorum, mundis, mundos, mundi, mundis*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 45; is in the Accusative Singular; and is the Direct Object of the transitive verb *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.: "The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative."

EXERCISE XXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aedificō, arē, avi, atum,	to build.
Arō, arē, avi, atum,	to plough.
Cantō, arē, avi, atum,	to sing.
Italiā, ae, f.	Italy.
Libērō, arē, avi, atum,	to liberate.
Renōvō, arē, avi, atum,	to renew.
Spērō, arē, avi, atum,	to hope.
Tarquīniūs, ii, m.	Tarquinius, Roman king.
Themistōclēs, is, m.	Themistocles, Athenian commander.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Lusciniam laudo.*<sup>1</sup> 2. *Lusciniam laudāmus.* 3. *Luscinias laudat.* 4. *Luscinias laudant.* 5. *Luscinia laudatur.* 6. *Lusciniae laudantur.* 7. *Patriam amāmus.* 8. *Pro patriā*<sup>2</sup> *pugnabimus.* 9. *Nonne*<sup>3</sup> *Themistōcles patriam liberāvit?* 10. *Patriam liberāvit.* 11. *Italiam libēravērunt.* 12. *Italia liberāta*<sup>4</sup> *est.* 13. *Tarquinius templum aedificā-*

<sup>1</sup> *Lusciniam* is the Direct Object of *laudo*, according to Rule V.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XXXII. page 24.

<sup>3</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>4</sup> For agreement of participle with subject, see Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

vit. 14. Templum aedificābat. 15. Tempa aedificavē-  
rant. 16. Tempa aedificāta erant. 17. Templum aedifi-  
cātum erit. 18. Puērū laudabāmus. 19. Puēri laudāti  
sunt. 20. Nonne<sup>1</sup> bellum renovātum est?

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The nightingale is singing. 2. The nightingales are  
singing. 3. The nightingales will sing. 4. The boys have  
been praised. 5. Did you not<sup>1</sup> praise the boys?<sup>2</sup> 6. We  
praised the boys. 7. The boys will be praised. 8. Have  
we not<sup>1</sup> liberated Italy? 9. You have liberated Italy.  
10. We will liberate the country. 11. We were ploughing  
the field. 12. Will you plough the field? 13. The field  
will be ploughed.

## FIRST CONJUGATION—THIRD DECLENSION.<sup>3</sup>

### ADVERBS.

### RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs<sup>4</sup> qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other  
ADVERBS:

Sāpientes feliciter<sup>4</sup> vivunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic. Facile<sup>4</sup>  
doctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud<sup>4</sup> aliter,  
*not otherwise.* Virg.

<sup>1</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>2</sup> The Latin word for *boys* in this sentence will be in the Accusative,  
according to Rule V., and will precede the verb.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil should now review the Third Declension (48-54).

<sup>4</sup> The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify  
verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Feliciter*, happily, is an adverb  
qualifying the verb *vivunt*, live (live *happily*). *Facile*, easily, unquestion-  
ably, is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissimus*, the most learned  
(*easily*, i.e. *unquestionably* the most learned). *Haud*, not, is an adverb quali-  
fying the adverb *aliter*, otherwise (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin  
usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these  
examples.

MODEL FOR PARSING ADVERBS.

Sāpientēs felicitēr vivunt, *The wise live happily.*

*Felicitēr* is an adverb, and qualifies *vivunt*, according to Rule LI:  
 “Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS.”

EXERCISE XXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Elōquentiā, ae, f.	<i>eloquence.</i>
Expugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to take, take by storm.</i>
Fortitēr, adv.	<i>bravely.</i>
Jūventūs, jūventūtis, f.	<i>youth.</i>
Ornō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to adorn, be an ornament to.</i>
Piētās, piētātis, f.	<i>filial affection, piety, duty.</i>
Pugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Servō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to preserve, keep, save.</i>
Vōlō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fly.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Avis volat. 2. Aves volant. 3. Nonne<sup>1</sup> avis cantābat? 4. Aves cantābant. 5. Rex urbem<sup>2</sup> aedificāvit. 6. Urbs aedificāta<sup>3</sup> est. 7. Urbes aedificātae<sup>3</sup> erunt. 8. Milītes fortitēr<sup>4</sup> pugnāverunt. 9. Scipio<sup>5</sup> milītes laudāvit. 10. Scipio<sup>5</sup> milītum virtūtem laudābat. 11. Scipionem laudāmus. 12. Scipio patrem servāvit. 13. Scipio urbem expugnāvit. 14. Urbs expugnāta est. 15. Milītes patriam amant. 16. Milītes<sup>5</sup> pro patriā pugnābant. 17. Piētās puēros ornat. 18. Virtūtes civitātem ornant.

<sup>1</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>2</sup> *Urbem*, direct object of *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.

<sup>3</sup> Why *aedificāta* in one case, and *aedificātae* in the other? Why not *aedificātus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

<sup>4</sup> *Fortitēr*, an Adverb qualifying *pugnāverunt*, according to Rule LI.

<sup>5</sup> In what order will you look out the words in this sentence? See Suggestion V.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The birds are singing. 2. Do you not<sup>1</sup> love birds?<sup>2</sup>  
 3. We love birds.<sup>3</sup> 4. This bird will fly. 5. Did you not<sup>1</sup>  
 save the city? 6. The soldiers saved the city. 7. Shep-  
 herds love the mountains. 8. We love virtue. 9. Is not  
 virtue loved? 10. It is loved. 11. Do not the citizens  
 praise the king? 12. They praise the king. 13. The king  
 will be praised. 14. The virtue of the king is praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.<sup>3</sup>

## EXERCISE XXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Convōcō, arē, āvī, ātūm,	to assemble, call together.
Duplicō, arē, āvī, ātūm,	to double, increase.
Dux, dūcis, m.	general, leader.
Fidēs, fidēi, f.	faith, fidelity, word, <sup>4</sup> promise.
Fūgō, arē, āvī, ātūm,	to rout.
Hōmō, hōmīnis, m.	man.
Sēnātūs, ūs, m.	senate.
Stimulō, arē, āvī, ātūm,	to stimulate.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Homīnes<sup>5</sup> cantum lusciniæ<sup>6</sup> laudant. 2. Cantus lus-  
 ciniae laudatur. 3. Romulus exercitum fugat. 4. Nonne

<sup>1</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>2</sup> Remember that the *object* in Latin usually precedes the verb.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil should now review these Declensions (116, 119).

<sup>4</sup> To keep one's word, *fidem servare*: I keep my word, *fidem meam servo*, or *fidem servo*, as the Latin possessives, *meus*, my, *tuus*, your, etc., when not emphatic, are often omitted; when expressed, they usually follow their nouns.

<sup>5</sup> In this sentence, what order will you follow, in accordance with Suggestion V., in looking out the words in the Vocabulary? In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *homīnes* (51, II.), *mīlites* (50, II.), *stimulavit* (205)?

<sup>6</sup> See Rule XVI. page 22.

exercitum fugavimus? 5. Exercitus fugatus est. 6. Exercitus fugatus erit. 7. Consul senatum convocavit. 8. Senatus convocatus est. 9. Senatus consulem laudavit. 10. Spes victoriae milites stimulavit. 11. Numerum dierum duplicavi. 12. Numerus dierum duplicatus est.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The boy has kept his word.<sup>1</sup> 2. Will you not keep your word? 3. We will keep our word. 4. The consul praised the fidelity of the citizens. 5. Will not the fidelity of the citizens be praised? 6. Will not the citizens praise the fidelity of the army? 7. They have praised the fidelity of the army. 8. Did not the general praise the army? 9. He praised the army. 10. The army will be praised.

## FIRST CONJUGATION — ADJECTIVES.<sup>2</sup>

### EXERCISE XXVI.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

Ampliō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to enlarge.</i>
Condemnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to condemn.</i>
Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, m.	<i>Hannibal, Carthaginian general.</i>
Innocens, innocentīs,	<i>innocent.</i>
Nobilīs, ē,	<i>noble.</i>
Nōvūs, ā, ūm,	<i>new.</i>
Occūpō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to occupy.</i>
Pūnicūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian, Punic.</i>

<sup>1</sup> See note 4, preceding page.

<sup>2</sup> The pupil should now review Adjectives (146-162).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rex urbem novam<sup>1</sup> ampliābat. 2. Urbem novam ampliābunt. 3. Rex urbem pulchram<sup>1</sup> ampliavērat. 4. Urbs pulchra servāta<sup>2</sup> est. 5. Hannibal multas civitatēs occupāvit. 6. Judices homīnem innocentissimum<sup>3</sup> condemnāvērunt. 7. Num Punīcum bellum renovātum est? 8. Nonne Punīcum bellum renovātum est? 9. Punīcum bellum renovātum est. 10. Romāni nobilissimas<sup>3</sup> urbes expugnāvērunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the brave soldiers save the city? 2. The brave soldiers will save the beautiful city. 3. The noble city will be saved. 4. We praise good boys. 5. Good boys will be praised. 6. Do you not praise diligent pupils? 7. Diligent pupils are praised. 8. The citizens praise the brave soldiers.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PRONOUNS.<sup>4</sup>

## EXERCISE XXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aliquis, aliquā, aliquīd or aliquōd,	<i>some one, somebody.</i>
Dēlectō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to delight.</i>
Diligentiā, ae, f.	<i>diligence.</i>
Nōn, adv.	<i>not.</i>
Sālūtō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to salute.</i>
Suūs, ā, ūm,	<i>his, her, its, their.</i>

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

<sup>2</sup> Why *servāta* rather than *servātus*? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, p. 54.

<sup>3</sup> In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 162.

<sup>4</sup> The pupil should now review Pronouns (182–191).



## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hanc<sup>1</sup> urbem servābit? 2. Hanc urbem pulchram servabimus. 3. Quis te<sup>2</sup> salutāvit? 4. Pater meus<sup>1</sup> te salutāt. 5. Haec<sup>1</sup> vita te delectat. 6. Philosophia nos<sup>2</sup> delectat. 7. Omnia animalia se<sup>2</sup> amant. 8. Fratres tui<sup>1</sup> laudantur. 9. Fratres mei laudāti sunt. 10. Puer parentes suos<sup>3</sup> amat. 11. Puēri boni parentes suos<sup>3</sup> amant. 12. Parentes nostros amāmus.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you blame me? 2. We do not<sup>4</sup> blame you. 3. Whom do you blame? 4. We blame your brother. 5. This book delights me. 6. These books delighted us. 7. Did not<sup>5</sup> your father praise you? 8. He praised us. 9. Did not<sup>5</sup> some one praise your diligence? 10. Our parents praised our diligence. 11. Did your brother blame you? 12. He did not<sup>4</sup> blame me. 13. He blamed himself. 14. He will be blamed.

---

<sup>1</sup> These Pronouns are all used as adjectives, and agree with their nouns like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32. Pronouns thus used as adjectives generally precede their nouns; but the Possessive Pronouns, *meus, tuus*, etc. (185), generally follow their nouns, as in this Exercise.

<sup>2</sup> Personal Pronouns, it will be remembered, are used as substantives (184). They are accordingly governed like any other substantives. See Rule V. p. 70. Observe that the object precedes the verb.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil will observe that *suos* in the tenth sentence must be rendered *his*, while in the eleventh it must be rendered *their*. Thus the meaning of the Possessive *suus* depends in part upon the number of the word to which it refers. It must be rendered *his* (*her, its*) when that word, as *puer* in the tenth sentence, is in the *Singular*; but it must be rendered *their* when that word, as *puēri* in the eleventh sentence, is in the *Plural*.

<sup>4</sup> When a verb with a direct object has also an adverb qualifying it, the usual order is *Object, Adverb, Verb*; but the adverb *non*, not, may stand either *before* or *after* the object.

<sup>5</sup> Nonne.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneō,	mōnērē,	mōnuī,	mōnitūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I advise.*

## SINGULAR.

mōneō  
mōnēs  
mōnēt;

## PLURAL.

mōnēmūs  
mōnētis  
mōnent.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising.*

mōnēbām  
mōnēbās  
mōnēbāt;

mōnēbāmūs  
mōnēbātis  
mōnēbant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.*

mōnēbō  
mōnēbis  
mōnēbit;

mōnēbimūs  
mōnēbitis  
mōnēbunt.

## PERFECT.

*I advised or have advised.*

mōnuī  
mōnuisti  
mōnuit;

mōnuimūs  
mōnuistis  
mōnuērunt, or ērē.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.*

mōnuērām  
mōnuērās  
mōnuērāt;

mōnuērāmūs  
mōnuērātis  
mōnuērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.*

mōnuērō  
mōnuēris  
mōnuērit;

mōnuērīmūs  
mōnuēritis  
mōnuērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can advise.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
möncām	möncāmūs
möncās	möncētīs
möncāt ;	möncant.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should advise.*

mönērēm	mönērēmūs
mönērēs	mönērētīs
mönērēt ;	mönērent.

PERFECT.

*I may have advised.*

mönuērīm	mönuērīmūs
mönuērīs	mönuērītīs
mönuērīt ;	mönuērint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have advised.*

mönuissēm	mönuissēmūs
mönuissēs	mönuissētīs
mönuissēt ;	mönuissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. möncē, advise thou ;	mönētē, advise ye.
FUT. mönētō, thou shalt advise,	mönētōtē, ye shall advise,
mönētō, he shall advise ;	mönentō, they shall advise

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mönērē, to advise.	PRES. mönens, advising.
PERF. mönuissē, to have advised.	
FUT. mönītūrūs essē, to be about to advise.	FUT. mönītūrūs, about to advise.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. mönendi, of advising,	
Dat. mönendō, for advising,	
Acc. mönendū, advising,	Acc. mönītū, to advise,
Abl. mönendō, by advising.	Abl. mönītū, to advise, be advised.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneōr,	mōnēri,	mōnītūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

*I am advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneōr	mōnēmūr
mōnēris, or rē	mōnēmīni
mōnētūr;	mōnemtūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I was advised.*

mōnēbār	mōnēbāmūr
mōnēbāris, or rē	mōnēbāmīni
mōnēbātūr;	mōnēbantūr.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be advised.*

mōnēbōr	mōnēbīmūr
mōnēbēris, or rē	mōnēbīmīni
mōnēbitūr;	mōnēbuntūr.

PERFECT.

*I have been or was advised.*

mōnītūs sūm <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī sūmūs
mōnītūs es	mōnītī estīs
mōnītūs est;	mōnītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*

mōnītūs ērām <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī ērāmus
mōnītūs ērās	mōnītī ērātīs
mōnītūs erāt;	mōnītī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*

mōnītūs ērō <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī ērimūs
mōnītūs ēris	mōnītī ēritīs
mōnītūs ērit;	mōnītī ērunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

# SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can be advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneār	mōneāmūr
mōneāris, or rē	mōneāmīni
mōneātūr;	mōneantūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be advised.*

mōnērēr	mōnērēmūr
mōnērēris, or rē	mōnērēmīni
mōnērētūr;	mōnērentūr.

## PERFECT.

*I may have been advised.*

mōnītūs sīm <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī sīmūs
mōnītūs sis	mōnītī sitīs
mōnītūs sit;	mōnītī sint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been advised.*

mōnītūs essēm <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītūs essēs	mōnītī essētīs
mōnītūs essēt;	mōnītī essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, be thou advised;	mōnēmīni, be ye advised.
FUT. mōnētōr, thou shalt be advised,	
mōnētōr, he shall be advised;	mōnentōr, they shall be advised.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnēri, to be advised,	
PERF. mōnītūs essē, to have been advised,	PERF. mōnītūs, advised,
FUT. mōnītūm iri, to be about to be advised.	FUT. mōnendūs, to be advised.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

## SECOND CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnui, mōnītūm,	<i>to advise.</i>
Pāreō, pārērē, pārui, pārītūm,	<i>to obey.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneo, monēbam, monēbo.<sup>1</sup> 2. Mones, monētis. 3. Monet, monent. 4. Monēmus, monebāmus, monebīmus. 5. Monēbant, monēbunt. 6. Monui, monuēram, monuēro. 7. Monuīmus, monuerāmus, monuerīmus. 8. Monuit, monuērunt. 9. Monuērat, monuērant. 10. Monuērit, monuērint. 11. Moneam, monērem, monuērim, monuīsem. 12. Moneat, moneant. 13. Moneret, monērent. 14. Monuērit, monuērint. 15. Monuisset, monuissent.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You advise, you were advising, you will advise. 2. He obeys, they obey. 3. He was obeying, they were obeying. 4. He will advise, they will advise. 5. He has obeyed, he had obeyed, he will have obeyed. 6. They have advised, they had advised, they will have advised. 7. I have advised, we have advised. 8. I had advised, I had obeyed. 9. He may advise, he may obey.

---

<sup>1</sup> The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe wherein they differ from each other.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Cantō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to sing.
Spērō, āre, āvi. ātūm,	to hope.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sperat, paret.<sup>1</sup> 2. Sperant, parent. 3. Sperāmus, parēmus. 4. Sperābat, parēbat. 5. Sperābant, parēbant. 6. Sperābam, parēbam. 7. Sperabāmus, parebāmus. 8. Sperabīmus, parebīmus. 9. Sperābo, parēbo. 10. Sperāvi, parui. 11. Speravēram, paruēram. 12. Speravēro, paruēro. 13. Speravīmus, paruīmus. 14. Speravērat, paruērat. 15. Speravērint, paruērint. 16. Sperāte, parēte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I sing, I advise. 2. I was singing, I was advising. 3. I will sing, I will advise. 4. He will hope, he will obey. 5. They will hope, they will obey. 6. They were singing, they were advising. 7. They sing, they advise. 8. He has hoped, he has obeyed. 9. They have hoped, they have obeyed. 10. He had sung, he had obeyed. 11. They had sung, they had obeyed. 12. We had hoped, we had advised. 13. We would sing, we would obey.

---

<sup>1</sup> In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Conjugations, — the First and the Second, — and should carefully observe the difference between them.

## SECOND CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

## OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

## EXERCISE XXX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aurūm, i, n.	gold.
Flōs, flōris, m.	flower.
Hābeō, hābērē, hābui, hābitūm,	to have, hold.
Mēreō, mērērē, mēruī, mērītūm,	to deserve, merit.
Philōsōphūs, i, m.	philosopher.
Pondūs, pondērīs, n.	weight, mass.
Praebeō, praebērē, praebui, praebītūm,	to furnish, give.
Praemiūm, ii, n.	reward.
Tāceō, tācērē, tācuī, tācītūm,	to be silent.
Terreō, terrērē, terruī, terrītūm,	to frighten, terrify.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Puēri libros habent. 3. Libros utiles<sup>1</sup> habēmus. 4. Librum utīlem habuisti. 5. Nonne bonum<sup>1</sup> amicum habēbis? 6. Bonum amicum habēbo. 7. Bonos amīcos habuīmus. 8. Rex amīcos habēbat. 9. Rex aurum habēbat. 10. Rex<sup>2</sup> magnum auri pondus<sup>3</sup> habuērat. 11. Gloriam veram habebītis. 12. Ver praebet flores. 13. Ver praebebit flores. 14. Philosophus tacēbat. 15. Discipūlus praemium meret.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the Latin adjective may either precede or follow its noun; though it seems more frequently to follow, unless it is emphatic.

<sup>2</sup> In this sentence, endeavor, in accordance with Suggestion IV., to discover the *subject*, *verb*, and *object*, before looking out the words in the Vocabulary. In what order will you look out the words in accordance with Suggestion V.?

<sup>3</sup> When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, as *pondus* by *magnum* and *auri*, the adjective usually precedes both nouns, and is followed by the genitive, as in this example: *magnum auri pondus*.



III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has my book? 2. I have your book. 3. Which book have you? 4. I have three<sup>1</sup> books. 5. My brother has ten books. 6. The king had a golden crown. 7. Did he not have many friends? 8. He had many friends. 9. You will have true friends. 10. The pupils are silent.<sup>2</sup> 11. Will you not be silent? 12. We will be silent.

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I: *Translate into English.*

1. Moneor, monēbar, monēbor. 2. Monēmur, monebāmur, monebīmur. 3. Moneātur, moneantur. 4. Monerētur, monerentur. 5. Monītus est, monīti sunt. 6. Monītus erat, monīti erant. 7. Monītus erit, monīti erunt. 8. Monētor, monentor. 9. Monet, monētur. 10. Monent, monentur. 11. Monēbat, Monebātur. 12. Monēbant, monebantur. 13. Monēbit, monebītur. 14. Monēbunt, monebuntur. 15. Monēmus, monēmur. 16. Monebāmus, Monebāmur. 17. Monebīmus, monebīmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is advised, they are advised. 2. I was terrified, we were terrified. 3. He will be advised, they will be advised. 4. You have been terrified, I have been terrified. 5. He had been advised, he had been terrified. 6. I shall have been advised, I shall have been terrified. 7. I advise, I am advised. 8. I was advising, I was advised. 9. I shall advise, I shall be advised. 10. They terrify, they are terrified. 11. They were terrifying, they were terrified. 12. They will terrify, they will be terrified.

---

<sup>1</sup> Place the Numeral *before* the noun.

<sup>2</sup> *Are silent* is to be rendered by the Latin verb *taceo*.

## FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Admōneō, admōnērē, admōnuī, admōnītūm,	<i>to admonish.</i>
Amō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to love.</i>
Invitō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to invite.</i>
Laudō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to praise.</i>
Terreō, terrērē, terrui, terrītūm,	<i>to terrify.</i>
Vitūpērō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to blame.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitātur, terrētur. 2. Invitantur, terrentur. 3. Invitāmur, terrēmur. 4. Invitabāmur, terrebāmur. 5. Invitabātur, terrebātur. 6. Invitabantur, terrebantur. 7. Invitabuntur, terrebuntur. 8. Invitabitur, terrebītur. 9. Invitābor, terrēbor. 10. Invitātus sum, terrītus sum. 11. Invitāti sumus, terrīti sumus. 12. Invitātus est, terrītus est. 13. Invitāti sunt, terrīti sunt. 14. Invitāti erant, terrīti erant. 15. Invitātus erat, terrītus erat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am invited, I am admonished. 2. You are invited, you are admonished. 3. He was praised, he was advised. 4. They were praised, they were advised. 5. You will be invited, you will be admonished. 6. He has been blamed, he has been terrified. 7. They had been loved, they had been admonished. 8. They will have been invited, they

will have been admonished. 9. I may be invited, I may be admonished. 10. I should be invited, I should be admonished.

## SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

### EXERCISE XXXIII.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

Apūd, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>near, before, among.</i>
Exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitum,	<i>to exercise, train.</i>
Frāter, frātris, <i>m.</i>	<i>brother.</i>
Māgistēr, māgistrī, <i>m.</i>	<i>master, teacher.</i>
Mēmōriā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>memory.</i>
Puēr, puērī, <i>m.</i>	<i>boy.</i>
Quis, quae, quid, <sup>1</sup>	<i>who, which, what?</i>
Rectē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>rightly.</i>
Tuūs, ā, ūm,	<i>your, yours.</i>

#### II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis monētur? 2. Nonne puer monētur? 3. Puer recte monētur. 4. Puērī recte monentur. 5. Discipūli recte monīti sunt. 6. Discipūlus recte monītus est. 7. Frater tuus recte admonītus erit. 8. Fratres tui recte admonīti erunt. 9. Nonne admonīti sumus? 10. Recte admonīti sumus. 11. Memoria exercētur. 12. Memoria

<sup>1</sup> For the declension of the Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, see 188.

exerceātur.<sup>1</sup> 13. Memoria exercebītur. 14. Discipūli apud magistros exercentur.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were not the boys terrified? 2. They were terrified. 3. Let<sup>2</sup> the pupils be admonished. 4. They have been admonished. 5. Who will be advised? 6. These boys will be advised. 7. Has your memory been exercised? 8. My memory has been exercised. 9. Was not the general terrified? 10. The general himself<sup>3</sup> was not terrified. 11. The soldiers were terrified.

## FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

### EXERCISE XXXIV.

#### I. .*Vocabulary.*

Cāmillūs, i, m.	<i>Camillus</i> , Roman general.
Exspectō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to await, expect.</i>
Hostis, is, m. and f.	<i>enemy.</i>
Ingens, ingentis,	<i>huge, large, great.</i>
Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, f.	<i>legion, body of soldiers.</i>
Nōn, adv.	<i>not.</i>
Nūmērūs, i, m.	<i>number.</i>
Optō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to wish for, desire.</i>
Pēcūniā, ae, f.	<i>money.</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Exerceātur*; the Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*. See 196. I. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Let be admonished* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

<sup>3</sup> *Himself* = *ipse*. See 186.

Philōsōphūs, i, m.	<i>philosopher.</i>
Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, m.	<i>teacher.</i>
Proeliūm, ii, n.	<i>battle.</i>
Rōmānūs, i, m.	<i>Roman, a Roman.</i>
Sūpērō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to conquer.</i>
Vērēcundiā, ae, f.	<i>modesty.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Camillus hostes superāvit. 2. Hostes superāti sunt.  
 3. Omnes discipūli paruērānt.<sup>1</sup> 4. Romāni hostem expectā-  
 bant. 5. Romāni<sup>2</sup> ingentem hostium numērum<sup>3</sup> expecta-  
 vērānt.<sup>1</sup> 6. Hostes proelium expectābant. 7. Praeceptor  
 tacēbat. 8. Discipūli tacēbant. 9. Verecundia juventūtem  
 ornat. 10. Philosōphus pecuniam non habet. 11. Philos-  
 ōphi pecuniam non optant.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are you expecting me? 2. We are expecting you.  
 3. Did you not await the enemy?<sup>4</sup> 4. We awaited the  
 enemy. 5. Have you not a good memory? 6. I have a  
 good memory. 7. Will the soldiers obey? 8. The brave  
 soldiers will obey. 9. Camillus had an army. 10. He  
 praised the army. 11. Did you advise the boy? 12. We  
 advised the boys. 13. Were not the enemy put to flight?<sup>5</sup>  
 14. They were put to flight.

<sup>1</sup> In accordance with Suggestion VII. 3, for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 205, 207.

<sup>2</sup> Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

<sup>3</sup> *Ingentem hostium numērum*, for arrangement see note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX.

<sup>4</sup> Put the Latin word in the plural.

<sup>5</sup> *Put to flight* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
regō,	regere,	rexī,	rectū.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I rule.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regō	regimūs
regis	regitis
regit ;	regunt.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling.*

regēbam	regēbāmūs
regēbas	regēbātis
regēbat ;	regēbant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will rule.*

regām	regēmūs
regēs	regētis
regēt ;	regent.

## PERFECT.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

rexī	reximūs
rexisti	rexistis
rexit ;	rexerunt, or ērē.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled.*

rexērām	rexērāmūs
rexērās	rexērātis
rexērāt ;	rexērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have ruled.*

rexērō	rexērīmūs
rexeris	rexeritis
rexerit ;	rexerint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can rule.*

SINGULAR.

rēgām

rēgās

rēgāt;

PLURAL.

rēgāmūs

rēgātis

rēgant.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*

rēgērēm

rēgērēs

rēgēret;

rēgērēmūs

rēgērētis

rēgērent.

PERFECT.

*I may have ruled.*

rexērīm

rexērīs

rexērīt;

rexērīmūs

rexērītis

rexērint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

rexissēm

rexissēs

rexissēt;

rexissēmūs

rexissētis

rexissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgē, rule thou;

FUT. rēgītō, thou shalt rule,

rēgītō, he shall rule;

| rēgītē, rule ye.

| rēgītōtē, ye shall rule,

| rēguntō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, to rule.

PERF. rexissē, to have ruled.

FUT. rectūrūs essē, to be about  
to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgens, ruling.

FUT. rectūrūs, about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. rēgendī, of ruling,

Dat. rēgendō, for ruling,

Acc. rēgendū, ruling,

Abl. rēgendō, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. rectū, to rule,

Abl. rectū, to rule, be ruled.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
rēgōr,	rēgī,	rectūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am ruled.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgōr	rēgimur
rēgeris, or rē	rēgimini
regitur;	reguntur.
IMPERFECT.	
<i>I was ruled.</i>	
rēgebār	rēgebāmur
rēgebaris, or rē	rēgebāmini
regebatur;	regebantur.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

rēgār	rēgemur
rēgeris, or rē	rēgemini
regetur;	regentur.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was ruled.*

rectūs sūm <sup>1</sup>	rectī sūmūs
rectūs es	rectī estis
rectūs est;	rectī sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*

rectūs ērām <sup>1</sup>	rectī ērāmūs
rectūs ērās	rectī ērātis
rectūs ērāt;	rectī ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been ruled.*

rectūs ērō <sup>1</sup>	rectī ērimūs
rectūs ēris	rectī ēritis
rectūs ērit;	rectī ērunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.



SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be ruled.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgār	rĕgāmūr
rĕgārīs, or rĕ	rĕgāmīni
rĕgātūr;	rĕgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

rĕgērēr	rĕgērēmūr
rĕgērērīs, or rĕ	rĕgērēmīni
rĕgērētūr;	rĕgērentūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been ruled.*

rectūs sīm <sup>1</sup>	rectī sīmūs
rectūs sis	rectī sitīs
rectūs sit;	rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

rectūs essēm <sup>1</sup>	rectī essēmūs
rectūs essēs	rectī essētīs
rectūs essēt;	rectī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rĕgērĕ, be thou ruled;	rĕgīmīni, be ye ruled.
FUT. rĕgītōr, thou shalt be ruled; rĕgītōr, he shall be ruled;	rĕguntōr, ye shall be ruled.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rĕgī, to be ruled.	PERF. rectūs, ruled.
PERF. rectūs essĕ, to have been ruled.	
FUT. rectūm irī, to be about to be ruled.	FUT. rĕgendūs, to be ruled.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

## THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dūcō, ērē, duxī, ductūm,	<i>to lead.</i>
Rēgō, ērē, rexī, rectūm,	<i>to rule, govern.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rego, regēbam, regam. 2. Regīmus, regebāmus, regēmus. 3. Regītis, regis. 4. Regēbas, regebātis. 5. Regēbant, regēbat. 6. Reget, regent. 7. Rexērunt, rexit. 8. Rexi, rexeram, rexēro. 9. Rexīmus, rexerāmus, rexerīmus. 10. Regas, regēres, rexēris, rexisses. 11. Regātis, regerētis, rexerītis, rexissētis. 12. Regam, regāmus. 13. Regerēmus, regērem. 14. Rexērit, rexerint. 15. Rexissent, rexisset. 16. Rege, regīte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will rule. 6. You have led, you have ruled. 7. He had led, he had ruled. 8. They had led, they had ruled. 9. He will have led, he will have ruled. 10. They may lead, they may rule. 11. He would lead, he would rule. 12. They would lead, they would rule. 13. We should have led, we should have ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — ACTIVE  
VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dicō, dicēre, dixī, dictūm,	<i>to say, tell, speak.</i>
Vocō, arē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to call.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocat, tacet, dicit.<sup>1</sup> 2. Vocant, tacent, dicunt. 3. Vocābant; tacēbant, dicēbant. 4. Vocābo, tacēbo, dicam.
5. Vocāvīmus, tacuīmus, dixīmus. 6. Vocāvi, tacui, dixi.
7. Vocavērunt, tacuērunt, dixērunt. 8. Vocavērat, tacuērat, dixērat.
9. Vocavērint, tacuērint, dixērint. 10. Vocem, taceam, dicam.
11. Vocārent, tacērent, dicērent. 12. Vocāte, tacēte, dicite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I invite, I admonish, I lead. 2. We call, we are silent, we speak. 3. We were inviting, we were admonishing, we were leading.
4. I shall call, I shall be silent, I shall speak. 5. He has invited, he has been silent, he has led. 6. He had praised, he had obeyed, he had ruled.
7. They had blamed, they had advised, they had spoken. 8. He may call, he may admonish, he may rule.

---

<sup>1</sup> In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the three Conjugations here represented, — the First, the Second, and the Third, — and should carefully observe the difference between them. The advantages of such a course are twofold: first, it teaches the pupil to distinguish the several Conjugations from each other, which is one of the most important lessons to be learned in the study of the language; and, secondly, it tends to form in him, thus early, the habit of close and accurate observation, the habit of marking differences and of tracing resemblances in kindred forms, which is of vital importance in the whole course of classical study.

## THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

## OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

## EXERCISE XXXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Animūs, ī, m.</i>	<i>mind, passion.</i>
<i>Bēnē, adv.</i>	<i>well.</i>
<i>Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, f.</i>	<i>eclipse.</i>
<i>Disertē, adv.</i>	<i>clearly, eloquently.</i>
<i>Edūcō, edūcērē, eduxī, eductū, m.</i>	<i>to lead forth.</i>
<i>Indicō, indicērē, indixī, indictū, m.</i>	<i>to declare.</i>
<i>Lātīnē, adv.</i>	<i>in Latin.</i>
<i>Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixī, praedictū, m.</i>	<i>to predict, foretell.</i>
<i>Sāpienter, adv.</i>	<i>wisely.</i>
<i>Thālēs, is, m.</i>	<i>Thales, a philosopher.</i>
<i>Tullūs, ī, m.</i>	<i>Tullus, a Roman name.</i>
<i>Vērū, ī, n.</i>	<i>truth.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Bene dixisti. 2. Nonne Cicēro in senātu dixērat? 3. Cicēro diserte dicēbat. 4. Oratōres diserte dicent. 5. Philosophus sapienter dixit. 6. Philosophi sapienter dixērunt. 7. Oratōres Latine dixērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnes eduxit. 9. Hannībal exercitū in Italiam duxit. 10. Quis bellum indixit? 11. Tullus bellum indixit. 12. Thales defectiōnem solis praedixit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who will speak the truth? 2. Have we not spoken the truth? 3. You have spoken the truth. 4. Will not the general lead forth the army? 5. He has led forth the army. 6. Do you not govern your mind? 7. We govern our minds. 8. Did you predict this war? 9. We did not predict the war. 10. Who has declared war? 11. The Romans have declared war.

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Regor, regēbar, regar. 2. Regīmur, regebāmur, regēmur. 3. Regar, regāmur. 4. Regerētur, regerentur. 5. Rectus est, rectus erat, rectus erit. 6. Recti sunt, recti erant, recti erunt. 7. Regit, regitur. 8. Regunt, reguntur. 9. Regēbat, regebātur. 10. Regēbant, regebantur. 11. Reget, regetur. 12. Regent, regentur. 13. Regīmus, regīmur. 14. Regebāmus, regebāmur. 15. Regēmus, regēmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is ruled, they are ruled. 2. I am ruled, I am led. 3. We are ruled, we are led. 4. He was ruled, they were ruled. 5. He will be ruled, they will be ruled. 6. We have been ruled, we have been led. 7. I lead, I am led. 8. We lead, we are led. 9. We were ruling, we were ruled. 10. He was leading, he was led. 11. They may rule, they may be ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—

PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocor, moneor, ducor. 2. Vocāmur, monēmur, ducimur. 3. Vocātur, monētur, ducitur. 4. Vocabātur, monebātur, ducebātur. 5. Vocabantur, monebantur, ducebantur. 6. Vocabuntur, monebuntur, ducentur. 7. Vocā-

tus es, monitus es, ductus es. 8. Vocāti estis, monīti estis, ducti estis. 9. Vocātus eram, monītus eram, ductus eram. 10. Vocātus erit, monītus erit, ductus erit.

## II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is invited, he is admonished, he is led. 2. We were called, we were advised, we were ruled. 3. He will be called, he will be advised, he will be ruled. 4. He may be invited, he may be admonished, he may be led. 5. He has been called, he has been advised, he has been led. 6. They have been called, they have been advised, they have been led.

## THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

## EXERCISE XL.

### I. *Vocabulary.*

Mundūs, i, m.	<i>world.</i>
Semper, adv.	<i>always, ever.</i>
Vērūm, i, n.	<i>truth.</i>

### II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mundus regitur. 2. Omnis hic mundus semper rectus est. 3. Hic mundus semper regetur. 4. Haec civitas bene regitur. 5. Hae civitates bene reguntur. 6. Civitates rectae sunt. 7. Anīmus regatur. 8. Exercitus in Italiam ductus est. 9. Multi exercitus in Italiam ducti erant. 10. Bellum indictum<sup>1</sup> erat. 11. Multa bella indicta<sup>1</sup> sunt.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the army led forth? 2. The army was led forth. 3. Has not this state been well governed? 4. This

<sup>1</sup> Why *indictum* in one example, and *indicta* in the other? Why not rather *indictus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

state has been well governed. 5. Will not the truth be spoken? 6. The truth has been spoken. 7. Let<sup>1</sup> the truth always be spoken. 8. Would not war have been declared? 9. War would have been declared.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—  
MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

EXERCISE XLI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Gallus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Gallus</i> , a proper name.
Hirundō, hirundīnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>swallow</i> .
Lūnā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>moon</i> .
Nuntiō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to proclaim, announce.</i>
Sensūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>feeling, perception.</i>
Supplicium, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>punishment.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiant. 2. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiavērant. 3. Discipūli laudabuntur. 4. Gallus defectiōnes solis praedixit. 5. Defectiōnes lunae praedixit. 6. Defectiōnes lunae praedicuntur. 7. Omne animal sensus habet. 8. Puēri tacēbant.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. This boy has not observed the law. 2. Good citizens will observe the laws. 3. Let the laws be observed. 4. Who has your book? 5. That boy has my book. 6. You shall have my book. 7. What did you say? 8. I spoke the truth. 9. The truth would have been spoken.

---

<sup>1</sup> Let be spoken, render by the Latin Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiō,	audire,	audivi,	audītum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I hear.*

## SINGULAR.

audiō  
audis  
audit;

## PLURAL.

audimūs  
auditis  
audiunt.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing.*

audiebām  
audiebās  
audiebat;

audiebāmūs  
audiebatīs  
audiebant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will hear.*

audiām  
audies  
audiēt;

audiēmūs  
audietīs  
audient.

## PERFECT.

*I heard or have heard.*

audivi  
audivisti  
audivit;

audivimūs  
audivistīs  
audiverunt, or erō.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard.*

audiverām  
audiverās  
audiverāt;

audiverāmūs  
audiverātīs  
audiverant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have heard.*

audiverō  
audiveris  
audiverit;

audiverimūs  
audiveritīs  
audiverint.



SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can hear.*

SINGULAR.

audiā**m**

audiā**s**

audiā**t** ;

PLURAL.

audiā**mūs**

audiā**tīs**

audiā**nt**.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*

audi**rēm**

audi**rēs**

audi**rēt** ;

audi**rēmūs**

audi**rētīs**

audi**rent**.

PERFECT.

*I may have heard.*

audi**vērīm**

audi**vērīs**

audi**vērīt** ;

audi**vērīmūs**

audi**vērītīs**

audi**vērīnt**.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*

audi**vissēm**

audi**vissēs**

audi**vissēt** ;

audi**vissēmūs**

audi**vissētīs**

audi**vissent**.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi**!**,    *hear thou ;*

FUT. audi**itō**,    *thou shalt hear,*

     audi**itō**,    *he shall hear ;*

audi**itē**,    *hear ye.*

audi**itōtē**,    *ye shall hear,*

audi**untō**,    *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audi**rē**,    *to hear.*

PERF. audi**vissē**,    *to have heard.*

FUT. audi**tūrus** **essē**,    *to be*  
     *about to hear.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audi**ens**,    *hearing.*

FUT. audi**tūrus**,    *about to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen. audi**endi**,    *of hearing.*

Dat. audi**endō**,    *for hearing.*

Acc. audi**endūm**,    *hearing.*

Abl. audi**endō**,    *by hearing.*

SUPINE.

Acc. audi**tūm**,    *to hear.*

Abl. audi**tū**,    *to hear, be heard.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audiōr,	audiri,	auditus sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am heard.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiōr	audimur
audiris, or rē	audimini
auditur;	audiuntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*

audiebār	audiebāmur
audiebaris, or rē	audiebāmini
audiebātur;	audiebantur.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.*

audiār	audiemur
audieris, or rē	audiemini
audietur;	audientur.

## PERFECT.

*I have been heard.*

auditus sūm <sup>1</sup>	auditi sūmus
auditus es	auditi estis
auditus est;	auditi sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*

auditus ērām <sup>1</sup>	auditi ēramus
auditus ēras	auditi ēratis
auditus ērāt;	auditi ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*

auditus ērō <sup>1</sup>	auditi ērimus
auditus ēris	auditi ēritis
auditus ērit;	auditi ērunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be heard.*

SINGULAR.

**audiār**  
**audiāris, or rē**  
**audiātūr;**

PLURAL.

**audiāmūr**  
**audiāmini**  
**audiantūr.**

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

**audirēr**  
**audirēris, or rē**  
**audirētūr;**

**audirēmūr**  
**audirēmini**  
**audirentūr.**

PERFECT.

*I may have been heard.*

**auditūs sim**<sup>1</sup>  
**auditūs sis**  
**auditūs sit;**

**auditī simūs**  
**auditī sitis**  
**auditī sint.**

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

**auditūs essēm**<sup>1</sup>  
**auditūs essēs**  
**auditūs essēt;**

**auditī essēmūs**  
**auditī essētis**  
**auditī essent.**

IMPERATIVE.

**PRES. audirē,** *be thou heard;* | **audiimini,** *be ye heard.*

**FUT. auditōr,** *thou shalt be heard,* | **audiuntōr,** *they shall be heard.*  
**auditōr,** *he shall be heard;*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

**PRES. audiri,** *to be heard.*

**PERF. auditūs esse,** *to have been heard.*

**FUT. auditūm iri,** *to be about to be heard.*

**PERF. auditūs,** *heard.*

**FUT. audiendūs,** *to be heard.*

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XLII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Custōdiō, irē, ivī, itūm,	<i>to guard.</i>
Dormiō, irē, ivī, itūm,	<i>to sleep.</i>
Erūdiō, irē, ivī, itūm,	<i>to instruct, refine, educate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Audis, audiēbas, audies. 2. Auditis, audiebātis, audietis. 3. Audio, audīmus. 4. Audiebam, audiebāmus. 5. Audiam, audiēmus. 6. Audivimus, audiverāmus, audiverimus. 7. Audivi, audivēram, audivēro. 8. Audivit, audivērunt. 9. Audiam, audirem, audivērim, audivissem. 10. Audiāmus, audirēmus, audiverimus, audivissēmus. 11. Audito, auditōte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I hear, I guard. 2. We hear, we guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. We have slept, you have heard. 7. I had heard, I had guarded. 8. He may hear, they may sleep. 9. They may hear, he may sleep. 10. He might hear, they might sleep. 11. He might sleep, they might hear.

## FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XLIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitat, admōnet, ducit, custōdit. 2. Invitant, admōnent, ducunt, custodiunt. 3. Invitābant, admonēbant, du-

cēbant, custodiēbant. 4. Invitābat, admonēbat, ducēbat, custodiēbat. 5. Invitavēram, admonuēram, duxēram, audivēram. 6. Invitaverāmus, admonuerāmus, duxerāmus, audiverāmus. 7. Invitavērim, admonuērim, duxērim, custodivērim. 8. Invitavērunt, admonuērunt, duxērunt, audivērunt.

## II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We invite, we admonish, we lead, we instruct. 2. I was inviting, I was admonishing, I was leading, I was instructing. 3. We were praising, we were obeying, we were speaking, we were instructing. 4. He will blame, he will advise, he will speak, he will instruct. 5. I have invited, you have obeyed, he has led, they have guarded.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

### OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

### EXERCISE XLIV.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

Arctē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>closely, soundly.</i>
Mūniō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to fortify.</i>
Sermō, sermōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>discourse, conversation.</i>
Thrāsýbúlus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Thrasybulus, Athenian general.</i>

#### II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives urbem custodiēbant. 2. Urbem custodiēmus. 3. Milītes templum custodiunt. 4. Verum auditis. 5. Verum audite. 6. Verum audiverāmus. 7. Verba tua audimus. 8. Verba mea audivisti. 9. Oratiōnem tuam audiui. 10. Sermōnem audiēbam. 11. Puēri arcte dormiunt. 12. Puēri cantum lusciniæ audiēbant. 13. Thrasybūlus urbem munivit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not hear us? 2. We hear you. 3. Who heard the oration? 4. We heard the oration. 5. The pupils heard the conversation. 6. They did not hear your oration. 7. The citizens are fortifying the city. 8. Who will guard this beautiful city? 9. The brave soldiers will guard the city. 10. Will you guard the temple? 11. We will guard the temple.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XLV.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Audīmur, audiebāmur, audiēmur. 2. Audiātur, audiāntur. 3. Audīrer, audirēmur. 4. Audītus sum, audīti sumus. 5. Audīti erāmus, auditus eram. 6. Audītus erit, audīti erunt. 7. Audit, auditur. 8. Audiunt, audiuntur. 9. Audiet, audiētur. 10. Audīrem, audirer. 11. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 12. Audiēbat, audiebātur. 13. Audīvit, auditus est. 14. Audivērat, auditus erat.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am instructed, we are instructed. 2. He will be instructed, they will be instructed. 3. They have been heard, they have been instructed. 4. They had been heard, he had been instructed. 5. He was instructing, he was instructed. 6. They are instructing, they are instructed. 7. We have heard, you have been heard. 8. You have instructed, we have been instructed. 9. I have heard, you have been heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLVI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitāris, admonēris, educēris, custodiris. 2. Invitantur, admonentur, educuntur, custodiuntur. 3. Invitātur, admonētur, educitur, custoditur. 4. Invitabitur, admonebitur, educetur, custodiētur. 5. Invitabatur, admonebatur, educebatur, custodiebatur. 6. Invitatus sum, admonitus sum, eductus sum, custoditus sum. 7. Invitāti erant, admonīti erant, educti erant, custodīti erant. 8. Invitāti essēmus, educti essēmus. 9. Admonitus esses, custoditus esses.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is called, he is terrified, he is led forth, he is guarded. 2. They are called, they are terrified, they are led forth, they are guarded. 3. They will be loved, they will be advised, they will be led, they will be heard. 4. I have been blamed, I have been admonished, you had been ruled, you had been guarded. 5. You had been blamed, I had been admonished. 6. You have been ruled, I have been guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Bellūm, i, n.	war.
Bēnignē, adv.	kindly.
Civīlis, ē.	civil.

Egrēgiē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>excellently.</i>
Filiūs, <i>ii, m.</i>	<i>son.</i>
Finīō, <i>irē, ivi, itūm,</i>	<i>to finish, bring to a close.</i>
Lēgātiō, <i>lēgātiōnis, f.</i>	<i>embassy.</i>
Vox, <i>vōcis, f.</i>	<i>voice.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vox audita<sup>1</sup> est. 2. Voces audiuntur. 3. Cantus luscinae auditur. 4. Cantus lusciniarum audiētur. 5. Urbs munita erat. 6. Urbes munientur. 7. Templum custodiētur. 8. Tempa custodiuntur. 9. Legatio benigne audita est. 10. Haec legatio benigne audiētur. 11. Verba tua benigne audientur. 12. Filii regis egregie erudiuntur. 13. Bellum civile finitum<sup>1</sup> est.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the orator heard? 2. The renowned orator was kindly heard. 3. Let the city be fortified.<sup>2</sup> 4. Let the temples be guarded. 5. The city has been fortified. 6. The temples will be guarded. 7. Let the war be brought to a close. 8. Let the boys be instructed. 9. Let the words of the instructor be heard.

## FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. — MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

### EXERCISE XLVIII.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

Athēniensis, <i>is, m. and f.</i>	<i>an Athenian.</i>
Cānis, <i>cānis, m. and f.</i>	<i>dog.</i>
Cōlō, <i>cōlēre, cōlui, cultūm,</i>	<i>to practise, cultivate.</i>
Cūm, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>with.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Why *audita* and *finitum*, instead of *auditus* and *finitus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

<sup>2</sup> *Let be fortified* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.



Firmō, arē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to strengthen.</i>
Gre <sup>x</sup> , grēgīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>herd, flock.</i>
Illustrō, arē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to illumine.</i>
Jungō, jungērē, junxī, junctūm,	<i>to join.</i>
Lābōr, lābōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>labor.</i>
Mōdestiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>modesty.</i>
Ovīs, ōvis, <i>f.</i>	<i>sheep.</i>
Portūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>port, harbor.</i>
Prūdentīā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>prudence.</i>
Terrā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>earth.</i>
Vālētūdō, vālētūdīnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>health.</i>
Vāriētās, vāriētātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>variety.</i>
Viōlō, arē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>violate.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sol terram illustrat. 2. Modestia puēros ornat. 3. Discipūli memoriam exercent. 4. Discipūli tui memoriam exercēbant. 5. Canes gregem custodiēbant. 6. Greges ovium custodiuntur. 7. Praeceptōres juventūtem erudient. 8. Labor valetudīnem tuam firmābit. 9. Variētas nos delectat. 10. Athenienses portum munivērunt. 11. Philosophia nos erudivit.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Good men love virtue. 2. Virtue will always<sup>1</sup> be loved. 3. Let virtue be always practised. 4. We will always practise virtue. 5. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 6. They will be punished. 7. Will you instruct these boys? 8. We will instruct good boys. 9. Who<sup>2</sup> led this army into Italy? 10. Hannibal led the army into Italy.

<sup>1</sup> For the syntax of adverbs, and for their place in the Latin sentence, see Rule LI. and note 4, p. 72.

<sup>2</sup> Which form of the Interrogative should be used, *quis* or *quī*? See 188.

## VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. *Verbs in io* are generally of the fourth conjugation; and even the few which are of the third are inflected with the endings of the fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels, as follows:

## ACTIVE VOICE.

214. *Capio, I take.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
cāpiō,	cāpēre,	cēpi,	captūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
cāpiō, cāpis, cāpit;	cāpimūs, cāpitīs, cāpiunt.
IMPERFECT.	
cāpiēbām, -iēbās, -iēbāt;	cāpiēbāmūs, -iēbātīs, -iēbant.
FUTURE.	
cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt;	cāpiēmūs, -iētīs, -ient.
PERFECT.	
cēpi, -istī, -it;	cēpimūs, -istīs, -ērunt, or ērē.
PLUPERFECT.	
cēpērām, -ērās, -ērāt;	cēpērāmūs, -ērātīs, -ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
cēpērō, -erīs, -erīt;	cēpērīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

cāpiām, -iās, -iāt;	cāpiāmūs, -iātīs, -iant.
---------------------	--------------------------

## IMPERFECT.

cāpērēm, -ērēs, -ērēt;	cāpērēmūs, -ērētīs, -erent.
------------------------	-----------------------------

## PERFECT.

cēpērīm, -erīs, -erīt;	cēpērīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.
------------------------	-----------------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt;	cēpissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.
---------------------------	--------------------------------

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
PRES. cāpě;		cāpītě.
FUT. cāpītō,		cāpītōte,
cāpītō;		cāpiuntō.

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.
PRES. cāpěř.		PRES. cāpiens.
PERF. cāpissě.		
FUT. captūrūs essě.		FUT. captūrūs.

GERUND.		SUPINE.
Gen. cāpiendī.		
Dat. cāpiendō.		
Acc. cāpiendūm.		Acc. captūm.
Abl. cāpiendō.		Abl. captū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

215. Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
cāpiōr,	cāpī,	captūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
cāpiōr, cāpēris, cāpītūr;		cāpīmūr, cāpīmīnī, cāpiuntūr.
IMPERFECT.		
cāpiēbār, -iēbāris, -iēbātūr;		cāpiēbāmūr, -iēbāmīnī, -iēbantūr.
FUTURE.		
cāpiār, -iēris, -iētūr;		cāpiēmūr, -iēmīnī, -ientur.
PERFECT.		
captūs sūm, ēs, est;		captī sūmūs, estīs, sunt.
PLUPERFECT.		
captūs ērām, ērās, ērāt;		captī ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT.		
captūs ērō, ēris, ērit;		captī ērimūs, ēritīs, ērunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
cāpiār, -iārīs, -iāntūr;	cāpiāmūr, -iāmīnī, -iantūr.
IMPERFECT.	
cāpērēr, -ērēris, -ērētūr;	cāpērēmūr, -ērēmīnī, -erentūr.
PERFECT.	
captūs sīm, sis, sīt;	capti simūs, sitīs, sint.
PLUPERFECT.	
captūs essēm, essēs, essēt;	capti essēmūs, essētīs, essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cāpērē;	cāpīminī.
FUT. cāpītūr,	
cāpītūr;	cāpiuntūr.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. cāpī.
PERF. captūs essē.
FUT. captūm irī.

## PARTICIPLE.

PERF. captūs.
FUT. cāpiendūs. <sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISE XLIX.

## I. Vocabulary.

A, ūb, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>from, by.</i>
Accipiō, accipērē, accēpī, acceptūm,	<i>to receive.</i>
Bellūm, i, n.	<i>war.</i>
Cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpī, captūm,	<i>to take, capture.</i>
Carthāgō, Carthāginīs, f.	<i>Carthage, city in Africa.</i>
Cornēlius, ii, m. -	<i>Cornelius, a proper name.</i>
Gallūs, i, m.	<i>Gaul, a Gaul.<sup>2</sup></i>

<sup>1</sup> The pupil will observe that the conjugation of *Capio* is somewhat peculiar, combining certain characteristics of the *Fourth Conjugation* with others of the *Third*. He should now carefully compare it with the conjugation of *Rego* and with that of *Audio*, and note with accuracy both the differences and the resemblances.

<sup>2</sup> The Gauls were a people inhabiting the country of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.

Jăciō, jăcērě, jēcī, jactŭm,	<i>to cast, throw, hurl.</i>
Lăpis, lăpidis, <i>m.</i>	<i>stone.</i>
Lux, lŭcis, <i>f.</i>	<i>light.</i>
Mŭrus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>wall.</i>
Publiŭs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Publius, a proper name.</i>
Rĕgŭlŭs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Regulus, Roman general.</i>
Tĕlŭm, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>javelin.</i>
Trōjă, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Troy, city in Asia Minor.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Graeci Trojam capiēbant. 2. Trojam cepērunt. 3. Troja capta<sup>1</sup> est. 4. Troja capta erat. 5. Regŭlus ipse captus est. 6. Belli duces capientur. 7. Haec urbs capiētur. 8. Illam urbem capiēmus. 9. Roma a Gallis<sup>2</sup> capta erat. 10. Galli Romam cepĕrant. 11. Scipio multas civitātes cepit. 12. Luna lucem a sole accĭpit. 13. Lucem a sole accĭpimus. 14. Tuam<sup>3</sup> epistōlam accĕpi. 15. Millĕtes tela jăciēbant.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We were taking the city. 2. The city will be taken. 3. The city has been taken. 4. The cities will be taken. 5. The cities have been taken. 6. Who<sup>4</sup> took Carthage? 7. Publius Cornelius Scipio took Carthage. 8. Have you not<sup>5</sup> received my letter? 9. I have received your letter. 10. Have you not received five letters? 11. We have received ten letters.

<sup>1</sup> For the agreement of the participle in the compound tenses with the subject, see Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XXXII., page 24.

<sup>3</sup> What is the usual place of the Possessive Pronoun? See page 77, note 1. In this sentence, *tuam* precedes its noun because it is emphatic.

<sup>4</sup> Which form of the Interrogative Pronoun should be used, *quis* or *quī*? See 188.

<sup>5</sup> Which Interrogative Particle should be used? See 346, II. 1, page 59.

## PART THIRD.

## S Y N T A X.

## CHAPTER I.

## SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

## SECTION I.

## CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought :  
Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts, so related that one is dependent upon the other :

Dōnec ēris felix, multos nūmērābis āmicos; *So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends.* Ovid.

1. CLAUSES. — In this example, two simple sentences, (1) “*You will be prosperous,*” and (2) “*You will number many friends,*” are so united that the first only specifies the time of the second : *You will number many friends, (when ?) so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts :

Sol ruit, et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends, and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

*Miltiades accusatus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.*

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

*Quis non paupertatem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty ? Cic.*

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne*, Is he writing ? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing ?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit*, Is he writing ?

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

*Iustitiam cole, Cultivate justice. Cic.*

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

*Reliquit quos viros, What heroes he has left ! Cic.*

## SECTION II.

### SIMPLE SENTENCES.

#### ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

*Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies. Liv.*

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, mōrītur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris mōrītur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE. — The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX. — The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.<sup>1</sup>

#### SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence must be a noun, or some word or words used as a noun:

*Rex*<sup>2</sup> dēcrēvit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego*<sup>3</sup> ad te scribo, *I write to you.* Cic.

#### SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

*Miltiādes est accūsātus*,<sup>3</sup> *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. *Tu es testis*, *You are a witness.* Cic. *Fortūna caeca est*, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Thus, in the example given above, the simple subject is *Cluilius*; the complex, *Cluilius, Albānus rex*; the simple predicate, *mōrītur*; the complex, *in his castris mōrītur*.

<sup>2</sup> In these examples, the noun *rex* and the pronoun *ego*, used as a noun, are the subjects.

<sup>3</sup> In the first of these examples, the predicate is the verb, *est accūsātus*; in the second, the noun and copula, *est testis*; and in the third, the adjective and copula, *caeca est*.

<sup>4</sup> Thus *testis*, in the second example, is a *Predicate Noun*, and *caeca*, in the third, is a *Predicate Adjective*.



## CHAPTER II.

### SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

#### SECTION I.

##### AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

#### RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.<sup>1</sup>

362. A Predicate Noun<sup>2</sup> denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,<sup>2</sup> *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

#### EXERCISE I.

##### I. Vocabulary.

Amnis, amnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>river.</i>
Creō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to create, make, elect.</i>
Graeciā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Greece.</i>
Impērātōr, impērātōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>commander.</i>
Lātinus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Latinus, Italian king.</i>
Lāviniā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Lavinia, a proper name.</i>
Mālūm, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>evil.</i>
Nōmīnō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to call, name.</i>
Nūmā, ae, <i>m.</i>	<i>Numa, Roman king.</i>
Rhēnūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>the Rhine, river in Europe.</i>
Servius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Servius, Roman king.</i>
Stultitiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>folly.</i>
Tūm, adv.	<i>then, at that time.</i>

<sup>1</sup> In illustrating in the subsequent pages the leading principles of the Latin Syntax, we shall take up the most common Rules in the order in which they stand in the Grammar. In doing so, we shall repeat in their proper places those Rules which we have had occasion to anticipate in the previous Exercises.

<sup>2</sup> See 352, 1; also Rule I. note, p. 59.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicero consul<sup>1</sup> fuit.<sup>2</sup> 2. Cicero orator fuit. 3. Cicero tum<sup>3</sup> erat<sup>2</sup> orator clarissimus.<sup>4</sup> 4. Puer orator erit. 5. Numa erat rex. 6. Numa rex<sup>1</sup> creatus est. 7. Cato imperator fuit. 8. Cato magnus imperator fuit. 9. Scipio consul creatus est. 10. Scipio consul fuerat. 11. Stultitia est malum. 12. Gloria est fructus virtutis. 13. Graecia artium<sup>5</sup> mater nominatur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Rhine is a large river. 2. Rome was a beautiful city. 3. Cato was a wise man. 4. Your father is a wise man. 5. Lavinia was the daughter of the king. 6. Latinus was king. 7. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 8. Tullia was the daughter of Servius.

## APPOSITIVES.

## RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive<sup>6</sup> agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex<sup>6</sup> moritur, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv. Urbes Carthago<sup>6</sup> atque Numantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia*. Cic.

<sup>1</sup> Predicate Noun. See Rule I. For Model for parsing Predicate Nouns, see p. 59.

<sup>2</sup> For the *place* of the verb with Predicate Nouns, see note on *fuit* under Exercise XIX.

<sup>3</sup> Adverb qualifying *erat*. See Rule LI. p. 72.

<sup>4</sup> See 162; also Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

<sup>5</sup> *Artium* depends upon *mater*. See Rule XVI. p. 22.

<sup>6</sup> See 363, note, p. 15; also Model, p. 16. *Rex*, *Carthago*, and *Numantia* are all Predicate Nouns.

## EXERCISE LI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Alexandĕr, Alexandrī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Alexander, the Great.</i>
Conjux, conjūgīs, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>wife, husband.</i>
Epīrūs, ī, <i>f.</i>	<i>Epirus, country in Greece.</i>
Erūditūs, ū, ūm,	<i>learned, instructed in.</i>
Hannŏ, Hannŏnīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Hanno, Carthaginian general.</i>
Justūs, ū, ūm,	<i>just, upright.</i>
Măcēdōniă, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Macedonia, Macedon.</i>
Nĕpŏs, nĕpŏtīs, <i>m.</i>	<i>grandson.</i>
Paulūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Paulus, Roman consul.</i>
Philippūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Philip, king of Macedon.</i>
Pyrrhūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.</i>
Vulnĕrŏ, ōrĕ, ūvī, ātūm,	<i>to wound.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro, eruditissĭmus *homo*,<sup>1</sup> consul<sup>2</sup> fuit. 2. Numa, justissĭmus *vir*, erat rex. 3. Ancus, Numae *nepos*,<sup>1</sup> rex fuit. 4. Hanno *dux* captus est.<sup>3</sup> 5. Pyrrhus, Epīri rex, vulnerātus est. 6. Philippus, rex Macedoniae, Athenienses superāvit. 7. Paulus consul<sup>1</sup> regem superāvit. 8. Philosophia, mater bonārum artium, nos erūdit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Tullia, *the daughter*<sup>1</sup> of Servius, was the wife<sup>2</sup> of Tarquin. 2. Servius, *the father* of Tullia, was a king. 3. Scipio, *the leader* of the Romans, took Carthage. 4. Scipio the general was praised. 5. Philip, king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander. 6. Alexander, the son of Philip, was king of Macedonia.

<sup>1</sup> Appositive. See Rule II. For Model for parsing Appositives, see p. 16.

<sup>2</sup> Predicate Noun. See Rule I.

<sup>3</sup> See 214.

## SECTION II.

## NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES. — Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. <sup>1</sup>

## RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative :

*Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned.* Liv. *Pātent portae, The gates are open.* Cic. *Rex vicit, The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

*Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. — See 460, 2, p. 54.

## EXERCISE LII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Libertās, libertātis, f.</i>	<i>liberty.</i>
<i>Opulentūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>rich, opulent.</i>
<i>Quōtidiē, adv.</i>	<i>daily.</i>
<i>Vitiūm, ii, n.</i>	<i>fault, vice.</i>
<i>Oppidum, i, n.</i>	<i>town, city.</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because it is thought it will best present the force of the several cases, and their relation to each other.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Italia*<sup>1</sup> liberāta<sup>2</sup> est. 2. *Urbs* Roma liberāta erat. 3. Haec *urbs* clarissīma liberabitur. 4. Haec *urbs* opulentissīma est capta. 5. Virtus quotidie laudatur. 6. Virtutes semper laudabuntur. 7. Sapientia semper est laudata. 8. Libertas semper laudabitur. 9. Omnia hostium oppida expugnata sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not *Philip* wounded? 2. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, was wounded. 3. Many *soldiers* were wounded. 4. Did not the soldiers fight bravely? 5. The soldiers fought bravely. 6. Will not the laws be observed? 7. The laws have been observed. 8. They will be observed.

## SECTION III.

## VOCATIVE.

## RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative :

Perge, Laeli,<sup>3</sup> Proceed, Laelius. Cic. Quid est, Cātīlina,<sup>3</sup> Why is it, Catiline? Cic. Tuum est, Servi,<sup>3</sup> regnum. The kingdom is yours, Servius. Liv.

## EXERCISE LIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Auditōr, auditōris, m.	hearer, auditor.
Cārūs, ā, ūm,	dear.
Jūvēnis, is, m. and f.	a youth, young man.
Lēgātūs, ī, m.	ambassador.
Sālūtō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to salute.

<sup>1</sup> Subject of *liberāta est*. See Rule III. For Model for parsing Subjects, see p. 57.

<sup>2</sup> Why *liberāta* rather than *liberātus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

<sup>3</sup> *Laeli*, *Catīlina*, and *Servi* are all in the Vocative by this Rule. *Laeli* is for *Laelie*; and *Servi*, for *Servie*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Te, *Scipio*,<sup>1</sup> salutāmus. 2. Vos, *amīci*<sup>1</sup> carissīmi,<sup>2</sup> salūto. 3. Vos, *auditōres* omnes, salutāmus. 4. Verba mea, *judices*, audite. 5. Hæc verba, *legāti*, audite. 6. Vos, milites, hanc urbem clarissimam custodite. 7. Milites<sup>1</sup> fortissīmi, patriam vestram liberāte. 8. Vestram virtutem, *juvēnes*, laudāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Boys*,<sup>1</sup> hear the words of your father. 2. *Judges*, you shall hear the truth. 3. *Father*, have we not spoken the truth? 4. You, boys, have spoken the truth. 5. Soldiers, you have fought bravely. 6. You, brave soldiers, have saved your country. 7. Pupils, I praise your diligence.

## SECTION IV.

## ACCUSATIVE.

## RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object<sup>3</sup> of an action is put in the Accusative :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world*.<sup>4</sup> Cic. Libera rem publicam, *Free the republic*. Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfēndite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people*. Cic.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the Vocative, according to Rule IV. No special Model for parsing is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different Rules are, of course, assigned for different cases. See Directions for Parsing, p. 15; also Model, p. 16.

The Vocative is not often the first word in the sentence, though it is sometimes thus placed, as in the seventh sentence in this Exercise.

<sup>2</sup> See 162.

<sup>3</sup> See note on Direct Object, p. 70.

<sup>4</sup> See note on the position of the Object in the Latin sentence, p. 70.

## EXERCISE LIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Flāminius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Flaminius</i> , Roman general.
Marcellūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Marcellus</i> , Roman general.
Poenūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian</i> .
Poenus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>a Carthaginian</i> .
Sanctūs, ā, ūm,	<i>holy, sacred</i> .
Siciliā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Sicily</i> , the island of.
Spōliō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to rob, spoil, despoil</i> .
Syrācūsae, ārūm, <i>f. plur.</i>	<i>Syracuse</i> , city in Sicily.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Alexander multas *urbes*<sup>1</sup> expugnāvit. 2. Italia pulchras *urbes* habuit. 3. Hostes *templa* spoliābant. 4. *Templa* sanctissima spoliavērunt. 5. Hannibal Flaminium<sup>1</sup> consulem<sup>2</sup> superāvit. 6. Poeni Siciliam occupavērant. 7. Marcellus<sup>3</sup> magnam hujus insulae<sup>4</sup> partem cepit. 8. Marcellus Syracūsas,<sup>1</sup> nobilissimam urbem,<sup>2</sup> expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not<sup>5</sup> love your *parents*?<sup>1</sup> 2. We love our *parents*. 3. You practise *virtue*. 4. Our pupils will practise *virtue*. 5. Did not Rome have beautiful temples? 6. Rome had beautiful temples. 7. Have not the enemy<sup>6</sup> taken the city? 8. They have taken the beautiful city. 9. They will plunder all the temples.

<sup>1</sup> Direct Object, in the Accusative, according to Rule V. For Model for parsing, see p. 71.

<sup>2</sup> Appositive. See Rule II. 363.

<sup>3</sup> Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

<sup>4</sup> *Hujus insulae*, of this island; i.e., of Sicily. Observe the position of the Genitive between the adjective *magnam* and its noun *partem*. See note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX. II. 10.

<sup>5</sup> See 346, II. 1.

<sup>6</sup> The Latin word must be in the plural.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

## RULE VIII. — Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME, and EXTENT OF SPACE, are expressed by the Accusative :

Römulus septem et triginta regnāvit annos,<sup>1</sup> *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *To walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōginta distāre, *To be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quattuor pēdes<sup>1</sup> alta, *Snow four feet deep.* Liv.

## EXERCISE LV.

## I. Vocabulary.

Aggēr, aggēris, m.	mound, rampart.
Ambūlō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to walk.
Centūm,	hundred.
Glādiūs, ii, m.	sword.
Lācēdaemōniūs, ii, m.	a Lacedaemonian, Spartan.
Lātūs, ū, ūm,	broad, wide.
Longūs, ū, ūm,	long.
Mēsis, mēsis, m.	month.
Nox, noctis, f.	night.
Octōgintā,	eighty.
Pēs, pēdis, m.	foot.
Quinquāgintā,	fifty.
Regnō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to reign.
Vigilō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to watch, be awake.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii pacem sex annos<sup>2</sup> servavērunt. 2. Magnam noctis partem<sup>2</sup> vigilavēram. 3. Puer octo horas

<sup>1</sup> Annos denotes *Duration of Time*, while millia and pedes denote *Extent of Space*. They are all in the Accusative by this Rule.

<sup>2</sup> In the Accusative denoting *Duration of Time*. See Rule VIII. No special Model for parsing is necessary. The pupil will be guided by previous directions and Models.



dormivit. 4. Latinus multos *annos* regnāvit. 5. In Italiā sex menses fuīmus. 6. In illā urbe decem dies fuīmus. 7. Agger octoginta pedes<sup>1</sup> latus fuit. 8. Hic gladius sex pedes longus est.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Did you not walk two *hours*? 2. We walked three *hours*. 3. Did you not sleep six *hours*? 4. We slept eight hours. 5. The soldiers guarded the city ten months. 6. Were you not in the city four months? 7. We were in the city five months. 8. The mound was fifty feet high.

### ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.

#### RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative:

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum<sup>2</sup> vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquinios,<sup>2</sup> *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic.

### EXERCISE LVI.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

Athēnae, ārūm, *f. plur.*

Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgī, fūgtūm,

Lysandēr, Lysandri, *m.*

Miltiādēs, is, *m.*

Nāvīgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,

*Athens, capital of Attica.*

*to flee, fly, run away.*

*Lysander, Spartan general.*

*Miltiades, Athenian general.*

*to sail, sail to.*

<sup>1</sup> In the Accusative, denoting *Extent of Space*.

<sup>2</sup> *Romam, Tarentum, and Tarquinios* are all names of towns used as the *Limit of Motion*; i.e., the motion is represented as ending in those towns. They are in the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

Rēducō, rēducērē, rēdūxī, rēductūm,	to lead back.
Rēvocō, arē, avi, atūm,	to recall.
Spartā, ae, f.	Sparta, capital of Laconia.
Tārentūm, i, n.	Tarentum, Italian town.
Thēbānūs, ā, ūm,	Theban.
Thēbānūs, i, m.	a Theban.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Cicēro *Romam*<sup>1</sup> revocātus est. 2. Consūles *Romam* revocāti sunt. 3. Hannībal *Carthaginem*<sup>1</sup> revocātus erat. 4. Lysander *Athēnas*<sup>1</sup> navigāvit. 5. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus est. 6. Consul regem Tarentum fugāvit. 7. Thebāni exercitum Spartam ducunt. 8. Miltiādes exercitum Athēnas reduxit.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who fled to Carthage?<sup>2</sup> 2. Did not the enemy flee to Carthage? 3. They fled to Carthage. 4. Will not the army be led back to Rome?<sup>2</sup> 5. The army has been led back to Rome. 6. The commander led the army to Athens.

## SECTION V.

### DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used,

- I. With Verbs.
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With their Derivatives, — Adverbs and Substantives.

### DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT. — A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the

<sup>1</sup> In the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

<sup>2</sup> The Latin word will be in the Accusative, in accordance with Rule IX.

action, — that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

### RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative :

#### I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs :

Tempōri<sup>1</sup> cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timuērant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Nōbis<sup>1</sup> vita dāta est, *Life has been granted to us.* Cic. Nūmītōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

#### II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons iter hostibus<sup>2</sup> dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges civitatibus suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

### EXERCISE LVII.

#### I. Vocabulary.

Carthāgīniensis, ē,	Carthaginian.
Carthāgīniensis, is, m. and f.	a Carthaginian.
Cōnōn, Cōnōnis, m.	Conon, Athenian gen <sup>l</sup> .
Dēbeō, dēbērē, dēbui, dēbitūm,	to owe.
Displiceō, displicērē, displicui, displicitūm,	to displease.
Dōnō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	to give.
Gens, gentis, f.	race.
Grātiā, ae, f.	favor, gratitude, thanks.
Lābōrō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	to strive for.

<sup>1</sup> Tempōri, sibi, and labōri are in the Dative with the Intransitive verbs *cēdit*, *timuērant* (intransitive here), and *student*; while *nobis* and *Numītōri* are in the Dative with the Passive verbs *data est* and *dēditur*.

<sup>2</sup> Hostibus is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *iter*, with the Transitive verb *dēdit*. In the same way, *civitatibus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *leges*, with the Transitive verb *scripsērunt*.

Monstrō, arē, āvī, ātūm,	<i>to show, point out.</i>
Plāceō, plācērē, plācuī, plācītūm,	<i>to please.</i>
Sēnectūs, sēnectūtis, <i>f.</i>	<i>old age.</i>
Sententiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>opinion.</i>
Serviō, servīrē, servīvī, servītūm,	<i>to serve.</i>
Viā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>way, road.</i>

## II. Translate into English.

1. Cives legibus<sup>1</sup> parent. 2. Multae Italiae civitates Romānis parēbant. 3. Haec sententia Caesāri<sup>1</sup> placuit. 4. Illa sententia Caesāri displicuit. 5. Milītes gloriae labōrant. 6. Hoc consilium Caesāri nuntiātum est. 7. Nostra consilia hostībus nuntiāta sunt. 8. Tibi<sup>2</sup> magnam gratiam habēmus. 9. Habeo senectūti magnam gratiam. 10. Conon pecuniam civībus donāvit. 11. Pastor puēro viam monstrāvit. 12. Tibi viam monstrābo. 13. Romāni Carthaginiensibus bellum indixērunt.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did I not obey my<sup>3</sup> father?<sup>1</sup> 2. You obeyed your father. 3. We will obey the laws of the state. 4. Do not the citizens serve the king? 5. They have served the king. 6. Will you not serve the state? 7. We will serve the state. 8. Will you not tell me (to me<sup>4</sup>) the truth?<sup>5</sup> 9. I have told you (to you) the truth. 10. Will you show

<sup>1</sup> Indirect Object, in the Dative, according to Rule XII. I.

<sup>2</sup> Indirect Object, in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *gratiam* with the Transitive verb *habēmus*, according to Rule XII. II.

In the arrangement of Objects, the *Indirect* generally precedes the *Direct*, as in this sentence; though the order is sometimes reversed, as in the tenth sentence in this Exercise.

<sup>3</sup> In examples like this, the Possessive pronoun may either be expressed or omitted, as it is often omitted in Latin when not emphatic.

<sup>4</sup> Dative. See Rule XII. II.

<sup>5</sup> Accusative. See Rule XII. II.

me (to me) the way? 11. We will show you the way.  
 12. Did they declare war against the Romans? 13.  
 They had declared war against the Romans.

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

## RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

*Patriae solum omnibus<sup>1</sup> carum est, The soil of their country is dear to all.* Cic. *Id aptum est tempori, This is adapted to the time.* Cic. *Omni aetati mors est communis, Death is common to every age.* Cic. *Canis similis lupo est, A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. *Naturae accommodatum, Adapted to nature.* Cic. *Graeciae utile, Useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE.—The most common are those signifying :

*Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in bilis.*

## EXERCISE LVIII.

## I. Vocabulary.

<i>Amicus, a, um,</i>	<i>friendly.</i>
<i>Hispania, ae, f.</i>	<i>Spain.</i>
<i>Multitudo, multitudinis, f.</i>	<i>multitude.</i>
<i>Saguntum, i, n.</i>	<i>Saguntum, city in Spain.</i>
<i>Similis, e,</i>	<i>like.</i>
<i>Solum, i, n.</i>	<i>soil.</i>
<i>Veritas, veritatis, f.</i>	<i>verity, truth.</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Dative, showing to whom the soil is dear, — dear TO ALL. In the same way in these examples, *tempori* is used with *aptum*, *aetati* with *communis*, *lupo* with *similis*, *naturae* with *accommodatum*, and *Graeciae* with *utile*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Parentes *nobis*<sup>1</sup> cari sunt. 2. Patria *nobis* cara est.  
 3. Patria *tibi*<sup>1</sup> erit carissima. 4. Patriae solum *nobis* carum  
 est. 5. Hannibal exercitui carus fuit. 6. Victoria Romā-  
 nis grata fuit. 7. Libertas multitudīni grata est. 8. Veri-  
 tas nobis gratissima est. 9. Jucunda mihi oratio fuit. 10.  
 Saguntum Romānis amicum fuit. 11. Hannibal Sagun-  
 tum,<sup>2</sup> Hispaniae civitatem<sup>3</sup> Romānis<sup>4</sup> amicam,<sup>5</sup> expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not these books be useful *to you*? 2. They are  
 useful *to us*. 3. They will be useful *to you*. 4. This law  
 has been useful to the state. 5. Will not this book be ac-  
 ceptable to you? 6. That book will be acceptable to me.  
 7. This book will be most acceptable<sup>6</sup> to my brother.

## SECTION VI.

## GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes  
*source* or *cause*; but, in its general use, it corresponds to  
 the English Objective with *of*, and expresses various ad-  
 jective relations.

## GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

## RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the  
 meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

<sup>1</sup> Dative, according to Rule XIV.

<sup>2</sup> Accusative. See Rule V.

<sup>3</sup> Appositive, in agreement with Saguntum. See Rule II.

<sup>4</sup> Dative with *amicam*. See Rule XIV.

<sup>5</sup> *Amicam* agrees with *civitatem*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

<sup>6</sup> See 162.

Cātōnis<sup>1</sup> ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *The camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmilcāris, *The death of Hamilcar*. Liv. See 363.

## EXERCISE LIX.

## I. Vocabulary.

Commūnis, ē,	common.
Conscientiū, ae, f.	consciousness.
Dulcis, ē,	sweet, pleasant.
Hōnōr, hōnōris, m.	honor.
Orbis, orbis, m.	circle, world.
Orbis terrārū, <sup>2</sup>	the world.
Parvū, ō, ūm,	small.
Principiū, ii, n.	beginning.
Rectū, i, n.	rectitude, right.
Sōcrātēs, is, m.	Socrates, Athenian philosopher.

## II. Translate into English.

1. *Justitia virtūtum*<sup>3</sup> regīna est. 2. *Sapientia est mater omnium bonārum artium*. 3. *Socrātes parens philosophiae* fuit. 4. *Virtus veri hōnōris*<sup>4</sup> mater est. 5. *Patria commūnis*<sup>5</sup> est omnium nostrum<sup>6</sup> parens. 6. *Roma orbis*<sup>7</sup> terrārum caput fuit. 7. *Omnium rerum principia parva* sunt. 8. *Conscientia recti est praemium virtūtis dulcissimum*.

<sup>1</sup> *Cātōnis* qualifies *oratiōnes*, and is in the Genitive, in accordance with the Rule.

<sup>2</sup> Literally *the circle of lands*.

<sup>3</sup> Genitive, depending upon *regīna*. Rule XVI.

<sup>4</sup> Genitive, depending upon *mater*.

<sup>5</sup> *Commūnis* agrees with *parens*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

<sup>6</sup> Genitive, depending upon *parens*.

<sup>7</sup> *Orbis* depends upon *caput*, and *terrārum* upon *orbis*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The orations of *Cicero* are praised.
2. The courage of the soldiers saved the city.
3. The crown of the king was golden.
4. The sword of the general was beautiful.
5. The son of the consul violated the laws of the state.
6. The citizens will observe the laws of the state.

## GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

## RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

*Avīdus laudis*,<sup>1</sup> *Desirous of praise*. Cic. *Otīi cūpīdus*, *Desirous of leisure*. Liv. *Amans sui virtus*, *Virtue fond of itself*. Cic. *Efficiens vōluptātis*, *Productive of pleasure*. Cic. *Glōriæ mēmōr*, *Mindful of glory*. Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force,—*of, in respect of*,—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax**, and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness*, and their contraries.

## EXERCISE LX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

*Amans, āmantis,*

*loving, fond of.*

*Avīdus, ā, ūm,*

*desirous of, eager for.*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Laudis* completes the meaning of *avīdus*; *desirous* (of what?) of *praise*. It is in the Genitive, by this Rule. In the same way, *otīi* completes the meaning of *cūpīdus*; *sui*, of *amans*; *vōluptātis*, of *efficiens*; and *glōriæ*, of *mēmōr*.



Certāmen, certāminis, <i>n.</i>	<i>contest, strife, battle.</i>
Cūpidus, ā, ūm,	<i>desirous of.</i>
Fons, fontis, <i>m.</i>	<i>fountain.</i>
Laus, laudis, <i>f.</i>	<i>praise.</i>
Nōvitas, nōvitātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>novelty.</i>
Pēritus, ā, ūm,	<i>skilled in.</i>
Piscis, piscis, <i>m.</i>	<i>fish.</i>
Plēnus, ā, ūm,	<i>full.</i>
Vōluptas, vōluptātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>pleasure.</i>

## II. Translate into English.

1. Romāni avidi *gloriae*<sup>1</sup> fuērunt. 2. Homīnes *novitātis* avidi sunt. 3. Numa *pacis*<sup>1</sup> erat amantissimus.<sup>2</sup> 4. *Patriae* amantissimi sumus. 5. Consul *gloriae* cupidus erat. 6. Cicero *gloriae* cupidissimus<sup>2</sup> fuit. 7. Milites erant avidissimi certāminis. 8. Fons piscium plenissimus est. 9. Athenienses belli navālis peritissimi fuērunt.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Boys are fond of *praise*. 2. Are you not fond of *praise*? 3. We are fond of *praise*. 4. Were not the Athenians fond of *pleasure*? 5. They were always fond of *pleasure*. 6. They are desirous of *glory*. 7. Are you not desirous of a victory? 8. We are desirous of a victory.

## SECTION VII.

### ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *from, by, in, with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives; while the Genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, completing the meaning of the adjective. See Rule XVII.

<sup>2</sup> See 162.

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

## RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means<sup>1</sup> are denoted by the Ablative :

*Ar̄s ūtilit̄ate laud̄atur, An art is praised because of its usefulness.*  
*Cic. Gl̄oriā dūcitur, He is led by glory.* *Cic. Duōbus mōdis fit, It is done in two ways.* *Cic. Sol omnia lūce collustrat, The sun illumines all things with its light.* *Cic. Apri dentib̄us se tūtantur, Boars defend themselves with their tusks.* *Cic. Aeger ērat vuln̄erib̄us, He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* *Nep. Laetus sorte tua, Pleased with your lot.* *Hor.*

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This Ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which*, any thing is or is done.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This Ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the preposition *cum* ; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*, — *mōre, ordinē, r̄atiōne*, etc., — occur without such accompaniment :

*Vī summa, With the greatest violence.* *Nep. Mōre Pers̄arum, In the manner of the Persians.* *Nep. Cum silentio audire, To hear in silence.* *Liv. Id ordinē facīre, To do it in order, or properly.* *Cic.*

---

<sup>1</sup> It is not always possible to distinguish between *Cause, Manner, and Means*. Sometimes the same Ablative may involve both *Cause* and *Means*, or both *Means* and *Manner*. Still the pupil should be taught to determine in each instance, as far as possible, what is the real force of the Ablative. Thus in the examples, *utilit̄ate* denotes cause, because of its usefulness ; *gl̄oriā*, means, with perhaps the accessory notion of cause ; *modis*, manner ; *luce*, means ; *dentib̄us*, means ; *vuln̄erib̄us*, cause, with perhaps the accessory notion of means ; and *sorte*, cause and means.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. — This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. — This designates the Person by whom any thing is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the preposition *a* or *ab*:

*Occisus est a Thebānis, He was slain by the Thebans.*<sup>1</sup> *Nep.*

## EXERCISE LXI.

### I. Vocabulary.

Mūnūs, mūnērīs, <i>n.</i>	<i>reward, gift.</i>
Nātūrā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>nature.</i>
Pellis, pellīs, <i>f.</i>	<i>skin, hide.</i>
Quōtīdīānūs, ā, ūm,	<i>daily.</i>
Scýthae, ārum, <i>m. plur.</i>	<i>Scythians.</i>
Triumphō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to triumph.</i>
Usūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>use.</i>
Vestiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to clothe.</i>

### II. Translate into English.

1. Consul *virtūte*<sup>2</sup> laudātus est. 2. Urbs *natūrā*<sup>3</sup> munita erat. 3. Haec urbs *arte* muniētur. 4. *Muneribus*<sup>3</sup> delectāmur. 5. Roma Camilli virtūte est servāta. 6. Camillus hostes magno proelio superāvit. 7. Scipio patrem singulāri virtūte servāvit. 8. Scipio ingenti gloriā<sup>4</sup> triumphāvit.<sup>5</sup> 9. Scythae corpōra pellībus vestiēbant.

<sup>1</sup> By comparing this example with those under the Rule, the second for instance, it will be seen that the Latin construction distinguishes the person by whom any thing is done from the means by which it is done, designating the former by the Ablative with *a* or *ab* (*a Thebānis*, by the Thebans), and the latter by the Ablative without a preposition; *gloriā*, by glory.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Cause, according to Rule XXI.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative of Means.

<sup>4</sup> Ablative of Manner.

<sup>5</sup> The privilege of entering Rome in grand triumphal procession was sometimes awarded to eminent Roman generals as they returned from victory. *Triumphāvit* here refers to such a triumph.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are not the fields adorned *with flowers*?<sup>1</sup> 2. The fields are adorned *with* beautiful *flowers*. 3. Have you not strengthened your memory *by use*? 4. I have strengthened my memory by daily use. 5. You will be praised for (because of) your diligence.<sup>2</sup> 6. Our pupils have been praised for their diligence. 7. The general saved the city by his valor. 8. Rome was saved by the valor of the Roman soldiers.

## ABLATIVES WITH COMPARATIVES.

## RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amabilius virtute,<sup>3</sup> *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.  
Quid est melius bonitate,<sup>3</sup> *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM<sup>4</sup> are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimatur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi<sup>5</sup> terribilior, *More terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of Means. Rule XXI.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Cause.

<sup>3</sup> *Virtute* and *bonitate* are both in the Ablative, by this Rule; the former after the comparative *amabilis*, and the latter after the comparative *melius*.

<sup>4</sup> *Quam* is a conjunction, meaning *than*. Conjunctions are mere connectives, used to connect words or clauses.

<sup>5</sup> *Agris* and *urbi*, the one *before* and the other *after* *quam*, are both in the same construction, in the Dative, depending upon *terribilior* according to Rule XIV. 391.

## EXERCISE LXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Argentūm, i. n.	silver.
Avāritiā ae. f.	avarice.
Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.	goodness, excellence.
Elōquens, elōquentis,	eloquent.
Ferrūm, i, n.	iron.
Foedūs, ā, ūm,	detestable.
Prētiōsūs, ā, ūm,	valuable.
Quām, conj.	than.
Scientiā, ae, f.	knowledge.
Turrīs, turrīs, f.	tower.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Virtus mihi <sup>1</sup> *gloriā* <sup>2</sup> est carior. 2. Patria mihi *vitā* <sup>2</sup> meā est carior. 3. Quid est jucundius *amicitiā*? 4. Quid foedius est *avaritiā*? 5. Aurum argento pretiosius est. 6. Anīmus corpore est nobilior. 7. Turrīs altior erat quam murus.<sup>3</sup> 8. Quid multitudīni <sup>1</sup> gratius quam libertas est? 9. Pater tuus est sapientior quam tu.<sup>4</sup> 10. Quis eloquentior fuit quam Demosthēnes?

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Silver is more valuable than *iron*.<sup>2</sup> 2. Virtue is more valuable than *gold*. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than *money*. 4. Will not wisdom be more useful to you than gold? 5. Wisdom will be more useful to me than gold. 6. Goodness is more valuable than <sup>5</sup> knowledge. 7. Good-

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XIV. 391.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative, depending upon the comparative without *quam*, according to Rule XXIII.

<sup>3</sup> In the same case as *turrīs*, the corresponding noun before *quam*. It is the subject of *erat* understood.

<sup>4</sup> Subject of *es* understood.

<sup>5</sup> In this and the following examples use *quam*, according to 417, 1.

ness is dearer to us than glory. 8. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 9. The soldiers were braver than the general.

### ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH any thing is or is done :

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH any thing proceeds, including *Source* and *Separation*.

### RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive :

I. Hannibal in Itāliā<sup>1</sup> fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. In nostris castris, *In our camps*. Caes. In Appiā viā, *On the Appian Way*. Cic. Ab urbe proficiscitur, *He departs from the city*. Caes. Ex Africā, *From Africa*. Liv.

II. Athēnis<sup>2</sup> fuit, *He was at Athens*. Cic. Bābŷlōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon*. Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth*. Cic. Rōmae<sup>2</sup> fuit, *He was at Rome*. Cic.

### EXERCISE LXIII.

#### I. Vocabulary.

A, āb, *prep. with abl.*

*from, by.*

Bābŷlōn, Bābŷlōnīs, *f.*

*Babylon, the city of.*

<sup>1</sup> In Itāliā, in castris, and in viā designate the PLACE IN WHICH ; while ab urbe and ex Africā designate the PLACE FROM WHICH. They are in the Ablative with a preposition.

<sup>2</sup> Athēnis, Bābŷlōne, and Cōrintho, being names of towns, omit the preposition ; while Rōmae, also the name of a town, is in the Genitive, as it is in the Singular of the First declension.

Cōrinthūs, i, <i>f.</i>	<i>Corinth</i> , city in Greece.
Diōnysius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Dionysius</i> , tyrant of Syracuse.
Hābitō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to dwell</i> , <i>reside</i> .
Hortūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>garden</i> .
Laetitiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>joy</i> .
Lūcūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>grove</i> .
Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>region</i> , <i>territory</i> .
Sēnātor, sēnātoris, <i>m.</i>	<i>senator</i> .
Trīgintā,	<i>thirty</i> .

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Hannibal *in Hispaniā*<sup>1</sup> fuit. 2. Latinus *in Italiā* regnāvit. 3. Latinus in illis regionibus regnābat. 4. Cives ab urbe<sup>2</sup> fugiebant. 5. Themistōcles e Graeciā fugit. 6. Sex menses<sup>3</sup> *Athēnis*<sup>4</sup> fui. 7. Alexander *Babylōne* erat. 8. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsīs fugit. 9. Themistōcles *Athēnis* fugit. 10. *Athēnis* habitābat. 11. Romūlus *Romae*<sup>5</sup> regnāvit. 12. *Romae* ingens laetitia fuit.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Is not your father *in Italy*? 2. My father is *in Greece*. 3. Were you not in Greece? 4. We resided in Greece three years. 5. Who is in the garden? 6. My brother is in the garden. 7. The pupils were walking in the fields. 8. The nightingales are singing in the groves. 9. Your father resided many years *at Athens*. 10. Did he not reside at Carthage? 11. He resided four years at Carthage. 12. Did you not receive my letter *at Rome*? 13. I received your letter at Corinth.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, with the preposition *in*. See Rule XXXII.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH, with the preposition *ab*.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule VIII.

<sup>4</sup> In the Ablative, without a preposition, because it is the name of a town.

<sup>5</sup> In the Genitive, because it is the name of a town, and is in the Singular of the First declension.

## ABLATIVE OF TIME.

## RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogēsimo anno<sup>1</sup> est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic.  
Vēre convēnere, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātāli die suo,  
*On his birth-day.* Nep. Hieme et aestate, *In winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word so used as to involve the time of an action or event may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugnā*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōriā*, in memory, i.e., in the time of one's recollection.

## EXERCISE LXIV.

## I. Vocabulary.

Brūtus, i, m.	<i>Brutus, a Roman patriot.</i>
Dēflāgrō, āre, āvi, ūtūm,	<i>to burn, be consumed.</i>
Diānā, ae, f.	<i>Diana, a goddess.</i>
Ephēsiūs, ā, ūm,	<i>Ephesian, of Ephesus.</i>
Hiems, hiēmīs, f.	<i>winter.</i>
Nātālis, ē,	<i>belonging to one's birth, natal.</i>
Nātālis diēs,	<i>birth-day.</i>
Pompēiūs, ii, m.	<i>Pompey, Roman general.</i>
Persae, ārūm, m. plur.	<i>Persians.</i>
Scribō, scribēre, scripsi, scriptūm,	<i>to write.</i>
Tempūs, tempōris, n.	<i>time.</i>

## II. Translate into English.

1. Nātāli die<sup>2</sup> tuo scripsisti epistolām. 2. Eōdem die epistolām tuam accēpi.<sup>3</sup> 3. Pompēius urbem tertio mense

<sup>1</sup> Anno, vere, die, hieme, and aestate are all in the Ablative, by this Rule.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Time, according to Rule XXVIII.

<sup>3</sup> From accipio.



cepit. 4. Eōdem *die* Persae superāti sunt. 5. Pompēius illo tempore miles fuit. 6. Illo anno Diānae Ephesiae templum deflagrāvit. 7. Occāsu solis hostes fugāti sunt. 8. Illo die Brutus patriam servāvit.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were you not in Athens<sup>1</sup> *at that time*? 2. We were at Corinth<sup>2</sup> *at that time*. 3. Do you not reside in the city<sup>1</sup> *in winter*? 4. We reside in this beautiful city in the winter. 5. The city was taken at sunset. 6. Were you not in the city at that hour? 7. I was in the city at that time. 8. Were you not in Rome<sup>2</sup> on your birth-day? 9. I was in that city on my birth-day.

## SECTION VIII.

### CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

#### RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad *amicum*<sup>3</sup> scripsi, *I have written to a friend*. Cic. In *cūriam*, *Into the senate-house*. Liv. In *Italiā*, *In Italy*. Nep. Pro *castris*, *Before the camp*.

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *To the city*. Cic. Adversus deos, *Toward the gods*. Cic.

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e or ex,	prae,	pro,	sine,	tēnus:

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of Place. See Rule XXVI.

<sup>2</sup> Genitive of Place. See Rule XXVI. II.

<sup>3</sup> The Accusative *amicum* is here used with the preposition *ad*; *curiam*, with *in*; the Ablative *Italiā*, with *in*. See 435, 1.

Ab urbe, *From the city.* Caes. Cōram conventu, *In the presence of the assembly.* Nep.

435. The ACCUSATIVE or ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, sūper:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia.* Cic. Hannibal in Itāliā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither*, the Ablative in answer to *where*: In Asiam, (*whither?*) *into Asia*; In Itāliā, (*where?*) *in Italy*.

## EXERCISE LXV.

### I. Vocabulary.

Adversūs, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>against.</i>
Dimicō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Pēr, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>of, through.</i>
Prospere, <i>adv.</i>	<i>successfully.</i>
Prōvocō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to challenge.</i>

### II. Translate into English.

1. Lacēdaemonii hostes ad *proelium* provocābant. 2. Scipio contra *Hannōnem*, ducem Carthaginiensium, prospere pugnat. 3. Caesar adversus Pompēium dimicāvit. 4. Veritas per se<sup>1</sup> mihi grata est. 5. Virtus per se laudabilis est. 6. Persae a *Graecis*<sup>2</sup> superāti sunt. 7. Cicēro de *amicitiā* scripsit.

### III. Translate into Latin.

1. Will not the army be led back to *the city*? 2. It has been led back to *the city*. 3. Will you not write to me? 4. I will write to you. 5. Friendship is valuable of itself. 6. Have you not received five letters from *me*? 7. I have received four letters from *you*. 8. I have received two letters from your brother.

<sup>1</sup> *Per se*, literally *through itself*: render in *itself* or *of itself*.

<sup>2</sup> *A Graecis*, by the Greeks. See 414, 5.

## SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

---

I. THE preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves,

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

### MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word, without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case, number, mood, tense*, etc.; and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark these properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mensa*, a table, but not of *mensarum*, of tables: the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *arum*.

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will not only readily distinguish the different parts of speech from each other, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.
2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case, number, voice, mood, tense*, etc.

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means, you will discover not only the relation of the words to each other, but also an important part of their meaning, — that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (345, I.) will be found in the simple subject and predicate; i.e., in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence, in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will, in most instances, enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied, in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates: as, *audio*, I hear, the ending *io* showing that the subject is *ego*; *auditis*, you hear, the ending *itis* showing that the subject is *vos*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now, combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject; i.e., adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i.e. (1) Oblique cases, accusatives, datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (345, II., III.), discover first the connectives which unite the several members, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are not to look for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nom. Sing. of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom. Sing.

If *vobis* occurs, you must remember that the Nom. Sing. is *tu*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nom. Sing.

Thus *mensibus*; stem *mens*, Nom. Sing. *mensis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *urbem*, *urb*, *urbs*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. Act.

Thus *amābat*; stem *am*, First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. *amo*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *amavērunt*; First Pers. Perf. *amāvi*, Perf. stem *amav*, Verb stem *am*; *amo*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

### *Model.*

VIII. Themistōcles imperātor servitūte totam Graeciam liberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their *forms*,

1) That *Themistōcles* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nom. Sing.

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Abl. Sing.

3) That *totam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accus. Sing.

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Act. voice, Indic. mood, Perf. tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistōcles* is the name of an eminent Athenian general: **THEMISTOCLES**.

2) That *libēro*, for which you must look, not for *liberāvit*, means *to liberate*: **LIBERATED**.

Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperātor* means *commander*: **THE COMMANDER**.

Themistocles the commander liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country: **GREECE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *totus* means *the whole, all*: **ALL**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servītus* means *servitude*: **FROM SERVITUDE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

#### STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing*<sup>1</sup> it, and by *parsing* the words which compose it.

#### *Parsing.*

XVII.<sup>2</sup> In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Inflect<sup>3</sup> it, if capable of inflection.
3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.<sup>4</sup>
4. Give its Syntax, and the Rule for it.<sup>5</sup>

#### TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

<sup>1</sup> It has not been thought advisable to enter upon the subject of *analysis* at this early stage of the course. That will be presented in the Reader, which follows this work.

<sup>2</sup> These suggestions are taken, without change, from the Reader. Accordingly, the numerals are made to correspond to those in that work.

<sup>3</sup> Inflect; i.e., decline, compare, or conjugate.

<sup>4</sup> That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

<sup>5</sup> For Models for Parsing, see pp. 16, 22, 24, 33, 55, 57, 59, 66, 71, and 73.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

*For Explanation of Abbreviations and References, see p. ix.*

<p style="text-align: center;">A.</p> <p>A, ab, <i>prep. with abl. From, by.</i></p> <p>Accipiō, accipere, accipi, acceptum. <i>To receive.</i></p> <p>Acēr, acris, acere. <i>Sharp, severe, valiant.</i></p> <p>Aciēs, aciēi, <i>f. Order of battle, battle-array, army.</i></p> <p>Ad, <i>prep. with acc. To, towards, near.</i></p> <p>Administrō, are, avi, atum. <i>To administer, manage.</i></p> <p>Admoneō, admonere, admonui, admonitum. <i>To admonish.</i></p> <p>Adventus, us, <i>m. Arrival, approach.</i></p> <p>Adversus, <i>prep. with acc. Against.</i></p> <p>Aedificō, are, avi, atum. <i>To build.</i></p> <p>Aestas, aestatis, <i>f. Summer.</i></p> <p>Agēr, agri, <i>m. Field, land.</i></p> <p>Agger, aggeris, <i>m. Mound, rampart.</i></p> <p>Agis, Agidis, <i>m. Agis, a king of Sparta.</i></p> <p>Albanus, a, um. <i>Alban.</i></p> <p>Alexander, Alexandri, <i>m. Alexander, the Great.</i></p> <p>Aliquis, aliquis, aliquis, aliquod. <i>Some, some one. See 191.</i></p> <p>Altus, a, um. <i>High, lofty.</i></p> <p>Amans, amantis. <i>Loving, fond of.</i></p>	<p>Ambulō, are, avi, atum. <i>To walk.</i></p> <p>Amicitia, ae, <i>f. Friendship.</i></p> <p>Amicus, a, um. <i>Friendly.</i></p> <p>Amicus, i, <i>m. Friend.</i></p> <p>Amnis, amnis, <i>m. River.</i></p> <p>Amō, are, avi, atum. <i>To love.</i></p> <p>Amor, amoris, <i>m. Love.</i></p> <p>Ampliō, are, avi, atum. <i>To enlarge.</i></p> <p>Ancus, i, <i>m. Ancus, a Roman king.</i></p> <p>Animā, animālis, <i>n. Animal.</i></p> <p>Animūs, i, <i>m. Soul, mind, passion, disposition.</i></p> <p>Annulus, i, <i>m. Ring.</i></p> <p>Annus, i, <i>m. Year.</i></p> <p>Antē, <i>prep. with acc. Before.</i></p> <p>Antiquus, a, um. <i>Ancient.</i></p> <p>Apis, apis, <i>f. Bee.</i></p> <p>Appellō, are, avi, atum. <i>To call.</i></p> <p>Appetens, appetentis. <i>Desiring, striving for.</i></p> <p>Apud, <i>prep. with acc. In the presence of, near, before, among.</i></p> <p>Apulia, ae, <i>f. Apulia, a country in Italy.</i></p> <p>Arabs, Arabis, <i>m and f. Arab, an Arab.</i></p> <p>Arctē, <i>adv. Closely, soundly.</i></p> <p>Argentum, i, <i>n. Silver.</i></p> <p>Arō, arare, aravi, aratum. <i>To plough.</i></p>
--	--

Arrōgantiā, ae, *f.* *Arrogance.*  
 Ars, artis, *f.* *Art, skill.*  
 Artāxerxēs, is, *m.* *Artaxerxes, a Persian king.*  
 Arx, arcis, *f.* *Citadel, fortress.*  
 Athēnae, ārum, *f. plur.* *Athens, the capital of Attica.*  
 Athēniēnsis, ē. *Athenian.*  
 Athēniēnsis, is, *m. and f.* *Athenian, an Athenian.*  
 Atticus, ī, *m.* *Atticus, a Roman name.*  
 Audiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To hear.*  
 Auditor, auditoris, *m.* *Hearer, auditor.*  
 Aureus, ā, um. *Golden.*  
 Aurum, ī, *n.* *Gold.*  
 Avāritiā, ae, *f.* *Avarice.*  
 Avidus, ā, um. *Desirous of, eager for.*  
 Avis, avis, *f.* *Bird.*

## B.

Bābylōn, Bābylōnis, *f.* *Babylon, the celebrated capital of the Assyrian Empire, on the banks of the Euphrates.*  
 Beātus, ā, um. *Happy, blessed.*  
 Bellum, ī, *n.* *War, warfare.*  
 Bēnē, adv. *Well.*  
 Bēnignē, adv. *Kindly.*  
 Bōnitās, bōnitātis, *f.* *Goodness, excellence.*  
 Bōnus, ā, um. *Good.*  
 Brēvis, ē. *Short, brief.*  
 Brutus, ī, *m.* *Brutus, a celebrated Roman patriot.*

## C.

Caesār, Caesāris, *m.* *Cæsar, a celebrated Roman commander.*  
 Caius, ii, *m.* *Caius, a proper name.*

Cāmillus, ī, *m.* *Camillus, a Roman general.*  
 Campūs, ī, *m.* *Plain.*  
 Cānis, cānis, *m. and f.* *Dog.*  
 Cantō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To sing.*  
 Cantis, ūs, *m.* *Singing, song.*  
 Cāpiō, cāpēre, cēpi, captum. *To take, capture.*  
 Cāpūt, cāpitis, *n.* *Head, capital.*  
 Carmēn, carminis, *n.* *Song, poem, verse.*  
 Carthāgīniēnsis, ē. *Carthaginian.*  
 Carthāgīniēnsis, is, *m. and f.* *A Carthaginian.*  
 Carthāgō, Carthāgīnis, *f.* *Carthage, a city of Northern Africa.*  
 Carthāgō Nōvā. *New Carthage, Carthagera, a city of Spain.*  
 Cārūs, ā, um. *Dear.*  
 Cātō, Cātōnis, *m.* *Cato, a distinguished Roman.*  
 Centum. *One hundred. See 175, 2.*  
 Certāmen, certāminis, *n.* *Contest, strife, battle.*  
 Cibūs, ī, *m.* *Food.*  
 Cicerō, Cicerōnis, *m.* *Cicero, the celebrated Roman orator.*  
 Civilis, ē. *Civil.*  
 Cīvis, cīvis, *m. and f.* *Citizen.*  
 Cīvitas, civitātis, *f.* *State, city.*  
 Clārus, ā, um. *Renowned, distinguished, illustrious.*  
 Classis, classis, *f.* *Fleet, navy.*  
 Coerceō, coercēre, coercui, coercitum. *To check.*  
 Cōlō, cōlērē, cōlui, cultum. *To practise, cultivate.*  
 Commūnis, ē. *Common.*  
 Condemnō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To condemn.*  
 Condītōr, condītōris, *m.* *Founder.*  
 Coniūx, coniūgis, *m. and f.* *Wife, husband, spouse.*



- Cōnōn, Cōnōnīs, *m.* *Conon*, an Athenian general.  
 Conscientiā, *ac, f.* *Consciousness.*  
 Consiliū, *ii, n.* *Design, plan.*  
 Conspectūs, *ūs, m.* *Sight, view, presence.*  
 Consul, consulis, *m.* *Consul.*  
 Contrā, *prep. with acc.* *Against, opposite to, contrary to.*  
 Convocō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To assemble, call together.*  
 Cōrinthūs, *i, f.* *Corinth*, city in Greece.  
 Cornēlius, *ii, m.* *Cornelius*, a Roman name.  
 Cōrōnā, *ae, f.* *Crown.*  
 Corpūs, corpōris, *n.* *Body, person.*  
 Creō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To create, make, appoint, elect.*  
 Crūdēlis, *ē.* *Cruel.*  
 Crūdūs, *ū, ūm.* *Unripe.*  
 Culpō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To blame.*  
 Cūm, *prep. with abl.* *With.*  
 Cūpidūs, *ū, ūm.* *Desirous of.*  
 Cūrēs, Cūriūm, *m. plur.* *Cures*, a Sabine town.  
 Custōdiō, *irē, ivī, itūm.* *To guard.*  
 Custōs, custōdis, *m. and f.* *Keeper, guard.*
- D.*
- Dē, *prep. with abl.* *Concerning.*  
 Dēbeō, dēbērē, debuī, dēbitūm. *To owe.*  
 Dēcēm. *Ten.* See 175.  
 Dēcimūs, *ū, ūm.* *Tenth.*  
 Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, *f.* *Eclipse.*  
 Dēflāgrō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To burn, be consumed.*  
 Dēlectō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To delight, please.*  
 Dēmārātūs, *i, m.* *Demaratus*, a Corinthian.
- Dēmōsthēnēs, *is, m.* *Demosthenes*, the celebrated Athenian orator.  
 Diānā, *ae, f.* *Diana*, the goddess of the chase.  
 Dicō, dicērē, dixī, dictūm. *To say, speak, tell.*  
 Diēs, diēi, *m.* *Day.* See 119, note.  
 Diligens, diligentis. *Diligent.*  
 Diligentia, *ae, f.* *Diligence.*  
 Dimicō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To fight.*  
 Diōnysius, *ii, m.* *Dionysius*, tyrant of Syracuse.  
 Discipulūs, *i, m.* *Pupil.*  
 Disertē, *adv.* *Clearly, eloquently.*  
 Displicēō, displicērē, displicui, displicitūm. *To displease.*  
 Divinūs, *ū, ūm.* *Divine.*  
 Dōlōr, dōlōris, *m.* *Pain, grief, suffering.*  
 Dōnō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To give, present.*  
 Dōnūm, *i, n.* *Gift.*  
 Dormiō, *irē, ivī, itūm.* *To sleep.*  
 Dracō, Dracōnis, *m.* *Draco*, an Athenian lawgiver.  
 Dūcenti, *ae, ū.* *Two hundred.*  
 Ducō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm. *To lead.*  
 Dulcis, *ē.* *Sweet, pleasant.*  
 Duō, *ae, ū.* *Two.* See 176.  
 Duplicō, *ārē, āvī, ātūm.* *To double, increase.*  
 Dux, dūcis, *m. and f.* *Leader, general.*
- E.*
- E, ex, *prep. with abl.* *From.*  
 Ebrietas, ebrietatis, *f.* *Drunkenness.*  
 Educō, educērē, eduxī, eductūm. *To lead forth, lead out.*  
 Effugiō, effugērē, effūgi, effūgitūm. *To escape.*  
 Egō, mei. *I.* See 184.

Egrēgiūs, ā, ūm. *Distinguished.*  
 Egrēgiē, *adv. Excellently.*  
 Elēphantūs, ī, m. *Elephant.*  
 Elōquens, elōquentīs. *Eloquent.*  
 Elōquentiā, ae, f. *Eloquence.*  
 Ephēsītūs, ā, ūm. *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*  
 Epīrūs, ī, f. *Epirus, a country in Greece.*  
 Epistōlā, ae, f. *Letter.*  
 Erūdīō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To instruct, refine, educate.*  
 Erūdītūs, ā, ūm. *Learned, instructed in.*  
 Ex, *prep. with abl. From.*  
 Exerceō, exercērē, exercuī, exercitūm. *To exercise, train.*  
 Exercitūs, ūs, m. *Army.*  
 Expugnō, arē, avi, atūm. *To take, take by storm.*  
 Expectō, arē, avi, atūm. *To await, expect.*  
 Exsūl, exsūlīs, m. and f. *Exile.*

## F.

Fāciēs, fāciēi, f. *Face, appearance.*  
 Ferrūm, ī, n. *Iron.*  
 Fertīlis, ē. *Fertile.*  
 Fidēlītās, fidēlītātīs, f. *Fidelity, faithfulness.*  
 Fidēs, fidei, f. *Faith, fidelity.*  
 Fidūs, ā, ūm. *Faithful.*  
 Filiā, ae, f. *Daughter.*  
 Filiūs, ii, m. *Son.*  
 Finiō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To finish, bring to a close.*  
 Finīs, finīs, m. *Limit, territory.*  
 Firmō, arē, avi, atūm. *To strengthen, confirm.*  
 Flāminīūs, ii, m. *Flaminius, a Roman general.*  
 Flōs, flōris, m. *Flower.*  
 Foedūs, ā, ūm. *Detestable.*

Fons, fontīs, m. *Fountain.*  
 Fortīs, ē. *Brave.*  
 Fortitēr, *adv. Bravely.*  
 Fortitūdō, fortitūdīnīs, f. *Bravery, fortitude.*  
 Fossā, ae, f. *Ditch, moat.*  
 Frātēr, frātrīs, m. *Brother.*  
 Fructūs, ūs, m. *Fruit, produce, income.*  
 Frumentūm, ī, n. *Corn, grain.*  
 Fugā, ae, f. *Flight.*  
 Fugiō, fugērē, fugi, fugitūm. *To flee, fly, run away.*  
 Fugō, arē, avi, atūm. *To rout, drive away.*  
 Fūnestūs, ā, ūm. *Destructive.*  
 Fūrōr, fūrōrīs, m. *Madness, insanity.*

## G.

Gallūs, ī, m. *Gallus, a proper name.*  
 Gallūs, ī, m. *Gaul, a Gaul, an inhabitant of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.*  
 Gemmā, ae, f. *Gem.*  
 Gēnēr, gēnērī, m. *Son-in-law.*  
 Gens, gentīs, f. *Race.*  
 Germāniā, ae, f. *Germany.*  
 Glādiūs, ii, m. *Sword.*  
 Glōbōsūs, ā, ūm. *Spherical.*  
 Glōriā, ae, f. *Glory.*  
 Graeciā, ae, f. *Greece.*  
 Graectūs, ā, ūm. *Grecian, Greek.*  
 Graectūs, ī, m. *Greek, a Greek.*  
 Grātiā, ae, f. *Favor, gratitude, thanks.*  
 Grātūs, ā, ūm. *Acceptable, pleasing.*  
 Grex, grēgīs, m. *Herd, flock.*

## H.

Hābeō, hābērē, hābuī, hābitūm. *To have, hold.*  
 Hābitō, arē, avi, atūm. *To dwell, reside.*

Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, *m.* *Hannibal*, a celebrated Carthaginian general.

Hannō, Hannōnīs, *m.* *Hanno*, a Carthaginian general.

Hastā, *ae, f.* *Spear.*

Hic, haec, hoc. *This.*

Hiems, hiēmīs, *f.* *Winter.*

Hirundō, hirundīnīs, *f.* *Swallow.*

Hispaniā, *ae, f.* *Spain.*

Hispanūs, *i, m.* *A Spaniard.*

Hōmērūs, *i, m.* *Homer*, the celebrated Grecian poet.

Hōmō, hōmīnīs, *m.* *Man.*

Hōnōr, hōnōrīs, *m.* *Honor.*

Hōrā, *ae, f.* *Hour.*

Hostīs, hostīs, *m. and f.* *Enemy.*

### I.

Idēm, eadēm, idēm. *Same*, the same. See 186.

Ignōrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To be ignorant of, not to know.*

Illē, illā, illūd. *That, he, she, it.* See 186.

Illustrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To illustrate, illumine.*

Imāgō, imāgīnīs, *f.* *Image, picture.*

Impātiens, impātientīs. *Impatient.*

Impērātōr, impērātōrīs, *m.* *Commander.*

Impēriūm, *ii, n.* *Reign, power, government.*

Impētūs, ūs, *m.* *Attack.*

Imprōbitās, imprōbitātīs, *f.* *Wickedness.*

In, *prep. with acc. and abl.* *Into, in, within.*

Incertūs, ā, ūm. *Uncertain.*

Indicō, indicērē, indixī, indictūm. *To declare.*

Infestō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To infest.*

Ingens, ingentīs. *Huge, large, great.*

Innocens, innocentīs. *Innocent.*

Insāniā, *ae, f.* *Insanity.*

Insulā, *ae, f.* *Island.*

Intēr, *prep. with acc.* *Between, among, in the midst of.*

Intrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To enter.*

Inventōr, inventōrīs, *m.* *Inventor.*

Invitō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To invite.*

Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm. *Self, he, himself.*  
See 186.

Is, eā, id. *That, he, she, it.*

Istē, istā, istūd. *That, such.* See 186.

Italiā, *ae, f.* *Italy.*

### J.

Jaciō, jacerē, jecī, jactūm. *To cast, throw, hurl.*

Jām, *adv.* *Now, already.*

Jucundūs, ā, ūm. *Delightful, pleasant.*

Jūdex, jūdīcīs, *m. and f.* *Judge.*

Jungō, jungērē, junxī, junctūm. *To join.*

Justitiā, *ae, f.* *Justice.*

Justūs, ā, ūm. *Upright, just.*

Jūvēnīs, jūvēnīs, *m. and f.* *A youth, young man.*

Jūventūs, jūventūtīs, *f.* *Youth, a youth, a young person.*

### L.

Lābōr, lābōrīs, *m.* *Labor.*

Lābōrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To strive for, labor, work.*

Lācēdaemōniūs, *ii, m.* *Spartan*, a Spartan, inhabitant of Sparta in Greece.

Laetitiā, *ae, f.* *Joy.*

Lāpīs, lāpīdīs, *m.* *Stone.*

Lātinē, *adv.* *In Latin.*

Lātinūs, *i, m.* *Latinus*, a Latin king.

Lātūs, ā, ūm. *Broad.*

Laudābilis, č. *Praiseworthy, laudable.*

Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To praise.*

Laus, laudis, *f. Praise.*

Lāviniā, ac, *f. Lavinia, a proper name.*

Lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, *f. Embassy.*

Lēgātūs, i, *m. Ambassador.*

Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, *f. Legion, a body of soldiers.*

Lēgō, lēgērē, lēgī, lectūm. *To choose, appoint.*

Leō, leōnis, *m. Lion.*

Lētālis, č. *Mortal, deadly.*

Lex, lēgis, *f. Law.*

Libēr, librī, *m. Book.*

Libērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To liberate.*

Libertās, libertātis, *f. Liberty.*

Longūs, ā, ūm. *Long.*

Lūcūs, i, *m. Grove.*

Lūnā, ac, *f. Moon.*

Luscīniā, ac, *f. Nightingale.*

Lux, lūcis, *f. Light.*

Luxuriā, ac, *f. Luxury.*

Lycurgūs, i, *m. Lycurgus, a Spartan lawgiver.*

Lysander, Lysandri, *m. Lysander, a Spartan general.*

### M.

Mācēdōniā, ac, *f. Macedonia, Macedonia, a country of Northern Greece.*

Māgistēr, māgistrī, *m. Master, teacher.*

Magnōpērē, *adv. Greatly.*

Magnūs, ā, ūm. *Great, large.*

Mālūm, i, *n. Evil.*

Marcellūs, i, *m. Marcellus, a celebrated Roman general.*

Mārē, mārīs, *n. Sea.*

Mātēr, matrīs, *f. Mother.*

Mātūrūs, ā, ūm. *Ripe.*

Mēmōriā, ac, *f. Memory.*

Mensā, ac, *f. Table.*

Mensis, mensis, *m. Month.*

Mercēs, mercēdis, *f. Reward.*

Mērcō, mērērē, mērui, mērītūm. *To deserve, merit.*

Meūs, ā, ūm. *My. See 185.*

Milēs, militis, *m. Soldier.*

Miltiādēs, is, *m. Miltiades, an Athenian general.*

Mōdestiā, ac, *f. Modesty.*

Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm. *To advise.*

Mons, montis, *m. Mountain.*

Monstrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To show, point out.*

Mōrā, ac, *f. Delay.*

Mors, mortis, *f. Death.*

Multitūdō, multitūdinis, *f. Multitude.*

Multūs, ā, ūm. *Much, many.*

Mundūs, i, *m. World, universe.*

Mūniō, irē, īvī, itūm. *To fortify, defend.*

Mūnūs, mūnēris, *n. Gift, present.*

Mūrūs, i, *m. Wall.*

Mūtātiō, mūtātiōnis, *f. Change, phase.*

### N.

Nātālis, č. *Belonging to one's birth, natal.*

Nātālis diēs. *Birth-day.*

Nātūrā, ac, *f. Nature.*

Nāvālis, č. *Naval.*

Nāvīgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To sail to.*

Nāvis, nāvis, *f. Ship.*

Nēcessāriūs, ā, ūm. *Necessary.*

Nēcessitās, nēcessitātis, *f. Necessity.*

Nēpōs, nēpōtis, *m. Grandson.*

Nōbilis, č. *Noble.*

Nōmēn, nōmīnis, *n. Name.*

Nōmīnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To call, name.*

*Nōn, adv. Not.*

*Nonnē, interrog. part. Expects the answer, Yes. See 346, II., 2.*

*Nostēr, nostrā, nostrū. Our, our own, ours.*

*Nōvītās, nōvītātīs, f. Novelty.*

*Nōvūs, ā, ūm. New.*

*Nox, noctīs, f. Night.*

*Nūbēs, nūbīs, f. Cloud.*

*Nūm, interrog. part. Expects the answer, No. See 346, II., 1.*

*Nūmā, ae, m. Numa, a Roman king.*

*Nūmērūs, ī, m. Number, quantity.*

*Nummūs, ī, m. Money, a piece of money, a coin.*

*Nuntiō, āre, āvi, ātūm. To proclaim, announce.*

### O.

*Obsēs, obsidīs, m. and f. Hostage.*

*Occāsūs, ūs, m. Setting, going down.*

*Occupō, āre, āvi, ātūm. To occupy, take possession of.*

*Octāvūs, ā, ūm. Eighth.*

*Octō. Eight. See 175, 2.*

*Octōgintā. Eighty. See 175, 2.*

*Octūlūs, ī, m. Eye.*

*Odiōsūs, ā, ūm. Odious, hateful.*

*Omnīs, ē. All, every, whole.*

*Oppidūm, ī, n. Town, city.*

*Oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm. To besiege, take by storm.*

*Optō, āre, āvi, ātūm. To wish for, desire.*

*Opulētūs, ā, ūm. Rich, opulent.*

*Opūs, ōpēris, n. Work.*

*Orātiō, orātiōnīs, f. Oration, speech.*

*Orātōr, orātōrīs, m. Orator.*

*Orbīs, orbīs, m. Circle.*

*Orbīs terrārūm. The world.*

*Ornō, āre, āvi, ātūm. To adorn, be an ornament to.*

*Ovis, ōvis, f. Sheep.*

### P.

*Pārens, pārentīs, m. and f. Parent. Pārēō, pārērē, pārui, pāritūm. To obey.*

*Parā, partīs, f. Part, portion.*

*Parvūs, ā, ūm. Small.*

*Passēr, passērīs, m. Sparrow.*

*Pastōr, pastōrīs, m. Shepherd.*

*Pātēr, pātrīs, m. Father.*

*Pātriā, ae, f. Native country, country.*

*Paulūs, ī, m. Paulus, a Roman consul.*

*Pax, pācis, f. Peace.*

*Pēcūniā, ae, f. Money.*

*Pellis, pellīs, f. Skin, hide.*

*Pēr, prep. with acc. Of, through.*

*Pērāgrō, āre, āvi, ātūm. To wander through.*

*Pēritūs, ā, ūm. Skilled in.*

*Persā, ae, m. A Persian.*

*Pēs, pēdis, m. Foot.*

*Philippūs, ī, m. Philip, king of Macedon.*

*Philōsōphiā, ae, f. Philosophy.*

*Philōsōphūs, ī, m. Philosopher.*

*Piētās, piētātīs, f. Filial affection, piety, duty.*

*Pīrātā, ae, m. Pirate.*

*Piscīs, piscīs, m. Fish.*

*Pisistrātūs, ī, m. Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.*

*Plācēō, plācērē, plācuī, plācītūm. To please.*

*Plēnūs, ā, ūm. Full.*

*Poenūs, ā, ūm. Carthaginian.*

*Poenus, ī, m. A Carthaginian.*

*Pōmūm, ī, n. Fruit.*

*Pompiliūs, īi, m. Pompilius, a Roman name.*

*Pompēiūs, īi, m. Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.*

*Pondūs, pondērīs, n. Weight, mass.*

Portūs, ūs, *m.* *Port, harbor.*  
 Post, *prep. with acc.* *After.*  
 Pōtens, pōtētis. *Powerful, able.*  
 Praebē, praebērē, praebui, praebītūm. *To show, furnish, give.*  
 Praeceptōr, praepceptōris, *m.* *Teacher, instructor.*  
 Praeceptūm, ī, *n.* *Rule, precept.*  
 Praeclārūs, ū, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished.*  
 Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixi, praedictūm. *To predict, foretell.*  
 Praemiūm, ii, *n.* *Reward.*  
 Prātūm, ī, *n.* *Meadow.*  
 Prētiōsus, ū, ūm. *Valuable.*  
 Primūs, ū, ūm. *First.*  
 Principiūm, ii, *n.* *Beginning.*  
 Prō, *prep. with abl.* *In behalf of, for.*  
 Proeliūm, ii, *n.* *Battle.*  
 Prospērē, *adv.* *Successfully.*  
 Prōvōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To challenge.*  
 Prudentiā, ae, *f.* *Prudence.*  
 Publiūs, ii, *m.* *Publius, a Roman name.*  
 Puellā, ae, *f.* *Girl.*  
 Puēr, puērī, *m.* *Boy.*  
 Pugnā, ae, *f.* *Battle.*  
 Pugnō, ātē, āvī, ātūm. *To fight.*  
 Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm. *Beautiful.*  
 Pūnicūs, ū, ūm. *Carthaginian, Punic.*  
 Pyrrhūs, ī, *m.* *Pyrrhus, a king of Epirus.*

## Q.

Quām, *conj.* *Than.*  
 Quartūs, ū, ūm. *Fourth.*  
 Quattuor. *Four.* See 175, 2.  
 Quī, quae, quōd, *rel. pronoun.* *Who, which, what.* See 187.

Quinquāgintā. *Fifty.* See 175, 2.  
 Quinquē. *Five.* See 175, 2.  
 Quintūs, ū, ūm. *Fifth.*  
 Quīs, quae, quīd? *interrog. pronoun.* *Who, which, what?* See 188.  
 Quīvis, quaevis, quodvis, or quidvis, *indef. pronoun.* *Whoever, whatever.* See 191.  
 Quōtidiānūs, ū, ūm. *Daily.*  
 Quōtidie, *adv.* *Daily.*

## R.

Rāmūs, ī, *m.* *Branch.*  
 Rātiō, rātiōnis, *f.* *Reason.*  
 Rectē, *adv.* *Rightly.*  
 Rectūm, ī, *n.* *Right, rectitude.*  
 Rēdūcō, rēdūcērē, rēdūxi, rēductūm. *To lead back.*  
 Rēginā, ae, *f.* *Queen.*  
 Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, *f.* *Region, territory.*  
 Rēgulūs, ī, *m.* *Regulus, a Roman general.*  
 Regnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To reign.*  
 Regnūm, ī, *n.* *Kingdom, royal authority.*  
 Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectūm. *To rule.*  
 Rēnōvō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To renew.*  
 Rēs, rei, *f.* *Thing, affair.*  
 Rēs publicā. *Republic.*  
 Rēvōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To recall.*  
 Rex, rēgis, *m.* *King.*  
 Rhēnūs, ī, *m.* *Rhine.*  
 Rōmā, ae, *f.* *Rome.*  
 Rōmānūs, ū, ūm. *Roman.*  
 Rōmānūs, ī, *m.* *Roman, a Roman.*  
 Rōmūlūs, ī, *m.* *Romulus, the founder of Rome.*

## S.

Sāguntūm, ī, *n.* *Saguntum, a town in Spain.*

Sālūs, sālūtīs, *f.* *Safety.*  
 Sālūtāris, ē. *Beneficial, salutary, advantageous.*  
 Sālūtō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To salute.*  
 Sanctūs, ā, ūm. *Holy, sacred.*  
 Sāpiens, sāpientīs. *Wise.*  
 Sāpientēr, *adv.* *Wisely.*  
 Sāpientiā, ae, *f.* *Wisdom.*  
 Schōlā, ae, *f.* *School.*  
 Scientiā, ae, *f.* *Knowledge.*  
 Scipiō, Scipiōnis, *m.* *Scipio, a distinguished Roman.*  
 Scribō, scribērē, scripsī, scriptūm. *To write.*  
 Scythae, ārum, *m. plur.* *The Scythians.*  
 Sēcundūs, ā, ūm. *Second, favorable.*  
 Sempēr, *adv.* *Always, ever.*  
 Sēnātor, sēnātorīs, *m.* *Senator.*  
 Sēnātūs, ūs, *m.* *Senate.*  
 Sēnectūs, sēnectūtīs, *f.* *Old age.*  
 Sensūs, ūs, *m.* *Feeling, perception, sense.*  
 Sententiā, ae, *f.* *Opinion.*  
 Sermō, sermonīs, *m.* *Discourse, conversation.*  
 Serviō, irē, īvi, itūm. *To serve.*  
 Serviūs, ii, *m.* *Servius, a Roman proper name.*  
 Servō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To preserve, keep, save.*  
 Servūs, i, *m.* *Slave.*  
 Sex. *Six.* See 175, 2.  
 Siciliā, ae, *f.* *Sicily.*  
 Silentium, ii, *n.* *Silence.*  
 Similis, ē. *Like.*  
 Singulāris, ē. *Remarkable, singular.*  
 Sūcēr, sūcēri, *m.* *Father-in-law.*  
 Sōciūs, ii, *m.* *Ally, associate.*  
 Sōcrātēs, īs, *m.* *Socrates, the celebrated Athenian philosopher.*  
 Sōl, sōlis, *m.* *Sun.*

Sōlōn, Sōlōnis, *m.* *Solon, an Athenian legislator.*  
 Sōlūm, i, *n.* *Soil.*  
 Spartā, ae, *f.* *Sparta, capital of Laconia.*  
 Spēciēs, spēciēi, *f.* *Appearance.*  
 Spērō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To hope.*  
 Spēs, spēi, *f.* *Hope.*  
 Spōliō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To rob, spoil, despoil.*  
 Stīmulō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To stimulate.*  
 Stultitiā, ae, *f.* *Folly.*  
 Suī, sibi. *Himself, herself, itself.*  
 See 184.  
 Sūm, essē, fuī. *To be.* See 204.  
 Sūpērō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To conquer.*  
 Supplīciūm, ii, *n.* *Punishment.*  
 Suūs, ā, ūm. *His, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*  
 Sýracūsae, ārum, *f. plur.* *Syracuse, a city of Sicily.*

*T.*

Tāceō, tācērē, tācuī, tāctūm. *To be silent.*  
 Tārentūm, i, *n.* *Tarentum, an Italian town.*  
 Tarquīniūs, ii, *m.* *Tarquin, a Roman king.*  
 Tēlūm, i, *n.* *Javelin, weapon.*  
 Tēmērītās, tēmērītātīs, *f.* *Rashness.*  
 Templūm, i, *n.* *Temple.*  
 Tempūs, tempōris, *n.* *Time.*  
 Terrā, ae, *f.* *Land, earth.*  
 Terrēō, terrērē, terruī, territūm. *To frighten, terrify.*  
 Tertiūs, ā, ūm. *Third.*  
 Thālēs, īs, *m.* *Thales, a Grecian philosopher.*  
 Thēbānūs, ā, ūm. *Theban, belonging to Thebes (a city in Greece).*

Thēbānūs, i, m. *A Theban.*  
 Thēmistōclēs, is, m. *Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian.*  
 Thrāsýbúlus, i, m. *Thrasybulus, the liberator of Athens.*  
 Ticínus, i, m. *Ticinus, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.*  
 Trēs, triā. *Three. See 176.*  
 Trigintā. *Thirty. See 175, 2.*  
 Triumphō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To triumph.*  
 Trōjā, ae, f. *Troy, ancient city in Asia Minor.*  
 Tū, tuī. *Thou, you. See 184.*  
 Tullīa, ae, f. *Tullia, a Roman proper name.*  
 Tullūs, i, m. *Tullus, a Roman king.*  
 Tūm, adv. *Then, at that time.*  
 Turrīs, turrīs, f. *Tower.*  
 Tuūs, ā, ūm. *Your, yours, thy, thine.*  
 Týrannūs, i, m. *Tyrant.*  
 Týriūs, ā, ūm. *Tyrian.*

## U.

Ulyssēs, is, m. *Ulysses, a Grecian king.*  
 Uníversūs, ā, ūm. *All, the whole, entire.*  
 Unūs, ā, ūm. *One. See 176.*  
 Urbs, urbīs, f. *City.*  
 Usūs, ūs, m. *Use.*  
 Utílīs, ē. *Useful.*

## V.

Vālētūdō, vālētūdínīs, f. *Health.*  
 Vāriētās, vāriētātīs, f. *Variety.*  
 Vāriūs, ā, ūm. *Various.*  
 Varrō, varrōnīs, m. *Varro, a Roman consul.*  
 Vēr, vēris, n. *Spring.*  
 Verbūm, i, n. *Word.*

Vērecundiā, ae, f. *Modesty.*  
 Vērītās, vēritātīs, f. *Truth, verity.*  
 Vērūs, ā, ūm. *True, real.*  
 Vērūm, i, n. *Truth.*  
 Vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm. *Your.*  
 Vestiō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To clothe.*  
 Viā, ae, f. *Way, road.*  
 Victōr, victōris, m. *Victor, conqueror.*  
 Victōriā, ae, f. *Victory.*  
 Victōriā, ae, f. *Victoria, Queen of England.*  
 Vīgīlō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To watch, be awake.*  
 Vilīs, ē. *Cheap.*  
 Vindex, vindicēs, m. and f. *Vindictor, avenger.*  
 Viōlō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To violate.*  
 Vīr, vīrī, m. *Man, hero, soldier.*  
 Virgō, virgínīs, f. *Maiden, girl.*  
 Virtūs, virtūtīs, f. *Valor, virtue.*  
 Vitā, ae, f. *Life.*  
 Vītūm, ii, n. *Fault, vice.*  
 Vītūpērō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To find fault with, censure, blame.*  
 Vivō, vivērē, vixī, victūm. *To live, reside.*  
 Vōcō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To call.*  
 Vōlō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To fly.*  
 Vōluntāriūs, ā, ūm. *Voluntary.*  
 Vōluptās, vōluptātīs, f. *Pleasure.*  
 Vox, vōcīs, f. *Voice.*  
 Vulnērō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To wound.*  
 Vulnūs, vulnērīs, n. *Wound.*  
 Vultūr, vultūrīs, m. *Vulture.*  
 Vultūs, ūs, m. *Countenance.*

## X.

Xerxēs, is, m. *Xerxes, a Persian king.*



## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

---

### A.

**A, an.** *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.

**Acceptable.** *Grātūs, ā, ūm.*

**Admonish.** *Admōneð, admōnērē, admōnui, admōnītūm.*

**Adorned.** *Ornātūs, ā, ūm.*

**Advise.** *Mōneð, mōnērē, mōnui, mōnītūm.*

**After.** *Post, prep. with acc.*

**Against.** *Contrā, prep. with acc.*  
Sometimes denoted by the Dative.

**Alexander.** *Alexandēr, Alexandri, m.*

**All.** *Omnīs, ē.*

**Always.** *Sempēr, adv.*

**Announce.** *Nuntið, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*

**Appoint.** *Creð, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*

**Army.** *Exercitūs, ūs, m.*

**Arrival.** *Adventūs, ūs, m.*

**At.** *Denoted by the Ablative of Place, or of Time.* See 421 and 426.

**Athenian.** *Athēniensīs, ē.*

**Athenian, an Athenian.** *Athēniensīs, is, m. and f.*

**Athens.** *Athēnæ, ārūm, f. plur.*

**Attack.** *Impetūs, ūs, m.*

**Await.** *Expectð, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*

### B.

**Battle.** *Proeliūm, ū, n.*

**Battle-array.** *Acies, ēi, f.*

**Be.** *Sūm, essē, fui.*

**Be silent.** *Taceð, tacerē, tacui, tacitūm.*

**Beautiful.** *Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm.*

**Before.** *Antē, prep. with acc.*

**Bird.** *Avīs, ūvis, f.*

**Birth-day.** *Nātālis diēs, m.*

**Blame.** *Vitupērð, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*

**Book.** *Liber, librī, m.*

**Boy.** *Puer, puērī, m.*

**Brave.** *Fortis, ē.*

**Bravely.** *Fortitēr, adv.*

**Bravery.** *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*

**Bring to a close.** *Finið, irē, iui, itūm.*

**Brother.** *Frāter, frātrīs, m.*

**Brutus.** *Brūtus, i, m.*

**By.** *A, ab, prep. with abl.* Often denoted by the Ablative alone.  
See 414.

### C.

**Caius.** *Caiūs, ū, m.*

**Call.** *Vocð, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*

**Camillus.** *Cāmillūs, i, m.*

**Can, can have.** See *may, may have.*

**Carthage.** *Carthāgð, Carthāgñis, f.*

**Carthaginian.** *Carthāgñiensīs, ē.*

**Carthaginian, a Carthaginian.** *Carthāgñiensīs, is, m. and f.*

**Cato.** *Cātð, Cātōnis, m.*

**Cicero.** *Cicērð, Cicērōnis, m.*

Citizen. *Civis, civis, m. and f.*  
 City. *Urbs, urbs, f.*  
 Cloud. *Nubēs, nubēs, f.*  
 Commander. *Impērātōr, impērātōris, m.*  
 Concerning. *Dē, prep. with abl.*  
 Consul. *Consul, consuls, m.*  
 Contrary to. *Contrā, prep. with acc.*  
 Conversation. *Sermō, sermōns, m.*  
 Corinth. *Cōrinthūs, i, f.*  
 Corinthian. *Cōrinthiūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Corinthian, a Corinthian. *Cōrinthiūs, ī, m.*  
 Cornelius. *Cornēliūs, ī, m.*  
 Could, could have. See might, might have.  
 Country. *Pātriā, ae, f.*  
 Courage. *Virtūs, virtūs, f.*  
 Crown. *Cōrōnā, ae, f.*

## D.

Daily. *Quōtidianūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Daughter. *Filiā, ae, f.*  
 Day. *Diēs, diēs, m.* See 119, note.  
 Dear. *Cārūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Declare. *Indicō, indicēre, indicī, indictum.*  
 Delight. *Dēlectō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*  
 Desirous of. *Cūpidūs, ū, ūm; āvidūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Did. *Often the sign of the Imperfect, or of the Perfect tense, especially in questions.*  
 Diligence. *Dilīgentiā, ae, f.*  
 Diligent. *Dilīgens, dilīgentis.*  
 Do. *Often the sign of the Present tense, especially in questions.*

## E.

Eight. *Octō.* See 175, 2.  
 Eighth. *Octāvūs, ū, ūm.*  
 Enemy. *Hostis, hostis, m. and f.*

Exercise. *Exercō, exercēre, exercui, exercitum.*

Exile. *Exsul, exsul, m. and f.*

Expect. *Exspectō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*

## F.

Father. *Pāter, pātris, m.*  
 Father-in-law. *Sōcēr, sōcēri, m.*  
 Fertile. *Fertils, ē.*  
 Fidelity. *Fidēs, fidēi, f.*  
 Field. *Agēr, agrī, m.*  
 Fifth. *Quintūs, ū, ūm.*  
 Fifty. *Quinquāgintā.* See 175, 2.  
 Fight. *Pugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*  
 Finish. *Finis, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 Five. *Quinquē.* See 175, 2.  
 Flee. *Fūgō, fūgēre, fūgī, fūgitum.*  
 Flower. *Flōs, flōris, m.*  
 Fly. *Volō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*  
 Foot. *Pēs, pēdis, m.*  
 Fond of. *Amans, amantis.*  
 For. *Prō, prep. with abl.* In the sense of *because of*, it is denoted by the Ablative alone (414); and in the sense of *for the benefit of*, by the Dative (384).  
 Fortify. *Muniō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 Four. *Quattuor.* See 175, 2.  
 Fourth. *Quartūs, ū, ūm.*  
 Friend. *Amicus, i, m.*  
 Friendship. *Amicitia, ae, f.*  
 From. *A, ab, prep. with abl.*  
 Fruit. *Fructus, ūs, m.*

## G.

Garden. *Hortus, i, m.*  
 Gaul. *Gallus, i, m.*  
 Gem. *Gemmā, ae, f.*  
 General. *Dux, dūcis, m. and f.*  
 Gift. *Dōnūm, i, n.*  
 Glory. *Glōriā, ae, f.*  
 Gold. *Aurūm, i, n.*  
 Golden. *Aureus, ū, ūm.*

Good. *Bōnūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Goodness. *Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.*  
 Govern. *Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectum.*  
 Great. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Greece. *Graeciā, ae, f.*  
 Grove. *Lūcūs, ī, m.*  
 Guard. *Custōdiō, irē, īvī, iūtūm.*

*H.*

Had. *Often the sign of the Pluperfect tense.*  
 Hannibal. *Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, m.*  
 Happy. *Beātūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Have. *Hābeō, hābērē, hābuī, hābitūm.*  
 Sometimes simply the sign of the Perfect tense; as, we have loved.  
 He, she, it. *Is, eā, id; illē, illā, illūd.* The pronoun is often implied in the ending of the verb.  
 He himself. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*  
 Hear. *Audiō, irē, īvī, iūtūm.*  
 High. *Altūs, altā, altūm.*  
 Himself. *Suī (184); ipsē, ipsā, ipsūm.*  
 His. *Suūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Hope (verb). *Spērō, arē, āvī, ātūm.*  
 Hope (noun). *Spēs, spēī, f.*  
 Hour. *Hōrā, ae, f.*  
 Hundred. *Centūm.* See 175, 2.

*I.*

I. *Egō, mē.* See 184.  
 In. *In,* prep. with abl.  
 In behalf of. *Prō,* prep. with abl.  
 Instruct. *Erūdiō, irē, īvī, iūtūm.*  
 Instructor. *Praeceptōr, praeceptōrīs, m.*  
 Into. *In,* prep. with acc.  
 Invite. *Invitō, arē, āvī, ātūm.*  
 Iron. *Ferrūm, ī, n.*  
 Island. *Insulā, ae, f.*  
 It. See *he, she, it.*  
 Italy. *Italīā, ae, f.*

*J.*

Judge. *Judex, iudicis, m. and f.*  
 Justice. *Iustitiā, ae, f.*

*K.*

Keep one's word. *Fidēm servārē.*  
 See p. 74, note 4.  
 Kindly. *Bēignē, adv.*  
 King. *Rex, regis, m.*  
 Knowledge. *Scientiā, ae, f.*

*L.*

Large. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Latinus. *Lātinūs, ī, m.*  
 Lavinia. *Lāviniā, ae, f.*  
 Law. *Lex, legis, f.*  
 Lead. *Dūcō, dūcērē, duxī, ductūm.*  
 Lead back. *Rēdūcō, rēdūcērē, rēduxī, rēductūm.*  
 Lead forth. *Edūcō, edūcērē, eduxī, ēductūm.*  
 Let. *Render by the Subjunctive.* See 196, I., 2.  
 Leader. *Dux, dūcis, m. and f.*  
 Letter. *Epistolā, ae, f.*  
 Liberate. *Liberō, arē, āvī, ātūm.*  
 Life. *Vitā, ae, f.*  
 Like. *Similis, ē.*  
 Love. *Amō, arē, āvī, ātūm.*

*M.*

Macedonia. *Mācēdōniā, ae, f.*  
 Man. *Hōmō, hōmīnis, m. Vīr, virī, m.* The latter is used as a term of respect; a true or worthy man, a hero.  
 Many. *Multi, ae, ā, plur.*  
 May, can. *Signs of the Present Subjunctive.*  
 May have, can have. *Signs of the Perfect Subjunctive.*  
 Me. See *I.*  
 Memory. *Mēmōriā, ae, f.*

Might, could, would, should. *Signs of the Imperfect Subjunctive.*

Might have, could have, would have, should have. *Signs of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

Mind. *Animūs, i, m.*

Moat. *Fossā, ae, f.*

Money. *Pēcūniā, ae, f.*

Month. *Mēnsis, mensis, m.*

More. *Sign of the Comparative degree.* See 160.

Most. *Sign of the Superlative degree.* See 160.

Mound. *Aggēr, aggēris, m.*

Mountain. *Mons, montis, m.*

Much. *Multū, adv.*

My. *Meūs, ā, ūm.* See 185.

### N.

Name. *Nōmēn, nōmīnis, n.*

Nightingale. *Luscīniā, ae, f.*

Noble. *Nōbīlis, ē.*

Not. *Nōn, adv.* Interrogative, *nonnē.*

### O.

Obey. *Pāreō, pārērē, pārui, pārtūm.*

Observe. *Servō, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*

Occupy. *Occūpō, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*

Of. *Denoted by the Genitive.* See 393.

Of itself. *Pēr sē.*

On. *Often denoted by the Ablative of Time.* See 426.

One. *Unūs, ā, ūm.* See 176.

Oration. *Orātiō, orātiōnis, f.*

Orator. *Orātōr, orātōris, m.*

Our. *Nostēr, trā, trūm.*

### P.

Parent. *Pārēns, pārēntis, m. and f.*

Philip. *Philippūs, i, m.*

Pisistratus. *Pisistrātūs, i, m.*

Please. *Plāceō, plācērē, plācuī, plācītūm.*

Pleasing. *Grātūs, ā, ūm.*

Pleasure. *Vōluptās, vōluptātis, f.*

Plough. *Arō, ārārē, ārāvi, ārātūm.*

Plunder (verb). *Spōliō, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*

Practise. *Exerceō, exercērē, exercuī, exercītūm.*

Praise (verb). *Laudō, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*

Praise (noun). *Laus, laudis, f.*

Precept. *Praeceptū, i, n.*

Predict. *Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixi, praedictūm.*

Present (noun). *Dōnūm, i, n.*

Publius. *Publius, ū, m.*

Punish. *Pūniō, irē, iwi, itūm.*

Pupil. *Discipulūs, i, m.*

Put to flight. *Fūgō, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*

### Q.

Queen. *Rēginā, ae, f.*

### R.

Receive. *Accipiō, accipērē, accēpi, acceptūm.*

Reign, royal authority. *Regnūm, i, n.*

Renowned. *Clārūs, ā, ūm.*

Reside. *Hābitō, ārē, āvi, ātūm.*

Rhine. *Rhēnūs, i, m.*

River. *Amnis, amnis, m.*

Roman. *Rōmānūs, ā, ūm.*

Roman, a Roman. *Rōmānūs, i, m.*

Rome. *Rōma, ae, f.*

Romulus. *Rōmūlūs, i, m.*

Rule. *Rēgō, rēgērē, rexi, rectūm.*

### S.

Safety. *Sālūs, sālūtis, f.*

Same. *Idēm, eūdēm, idēm.* See 186.

Say. *Dicō, dicērē, dixi, dictūm.*

Save. *Servō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Scipio. *Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m.*  
 Senator. *Sēnātor, sēnātoris, m.*  
 Serve. *Serviō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 Servius. *Serviūs, ii, m.*  
 Setting. *Occāsūs, ūs, m.*  
 Shall, will. *Signs of the Future tense.*  
 Shall have, will have. *Signs of the Future Perfect tense.*  
 Shepherd. *Pastor, pastoris, m.*  
 Should, should have. *See might, might have.*  
 Show. *Monstrō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Sicily. *Siciliā, ae, f.*  
 Silent. *See be silent.*  
 Silver. *Argentum, i, n.*  
 Sing. *Cantō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Singing, a song. *Cantūs, ūs, m.*  
 Six. *Sex.* See 175, 2.  
 Slave. *Serviūs, i, m.*  
 Sleep. *Dormiō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 Soldier. *Milēs, militis, m.*  
 Somebody, some one. *Aliquīs, aliquā, aliquōd, or aliquōd.* See 191.  
 Son. *Filiūs, ii, m.*  
 Son-in-law. *Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.*  
 Song. *Carmēn, carminis, n.*  
 Speak. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum.*  
 State. *Civitas, civitatis, f.*  
 Strengthen. *Firmō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Sun. *Sol, solis, m.*  
 Sunset. *Occāsūs solis.*  
 Sword. *Gladius, ii, m.*

**T.**

Take. *Capiō, capere, cepi, captum.*  
 Take by storm. *Expugnō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Tarquin. *Tarquinius, ii, m.*  
 Tell. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum.*  
 Temple. *Templum, i, n.*

Ten. *Dēcēm.* See 175, 2.  
 Terrify. *Terreō, terrere, terrui, territum.*  
 Than. *Quān.* Often omitted, in which case the Ablative follows. See 417.  
 That. *Illē, illā, illud.* See 186.  
 The. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.  
 Their. *Suūs, ō, ūm.*  
 Then. *Tūn, adv.*  
 Thing. *Rēs, rei, f.*  
 This. *Hic, haec, hoc.* See 186.  
 Three. *Trēs, triū.* See 176.  
 Time. *Tempūs, temporis, n.*  
 To. *Ad, in, preps. with acc.* *To* is sometimes denoted by the Accusative, and sometimes by the Dative. See 379 and 384.  
 True. *Vērūs, ō, ūm.*  
 Truth. *Vērūm, i, n.*  
 Tullia. *Tullia, ae, f.*  
 Two. *Duō, duae, duō.* See 176.  
 Tyrant. *Tyrannūs, i, m.*

**U.**

Use. *Usus, ūs, m.*  
 Useful. *Utilis, e.*

**V.**

Valor. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*  
 Valuable. *Prētiōsūs, ō, ūm.*  
 Very. *Sometimes the sign of the Superlative.* See 160.  
 Victoria. *Victoriā, ae, f.*  
 Victory. *Victoriā, ae, f.*  
 Violate. *Viōlō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Virtue. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*

**W.**

Walk. *Ambulō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 War. *Bellum, i, n.*

Way. *Viā, ae, f.*

Well. *Bēnē, adv.*

Who, which (relative). *Quī, quae, quōd.* See 187.

Who, which, what (interrogative)?

*Quis, quae, quid? quī, quae, quōd?*

See 188.

Wide. *Lātūs, ā, ūm.*

Wife. *Conjux, conjūgīs, f.*

Will, will have. See *shall, shall have.*

Winter. *Hiems, hiēmīs, f.*

Wisdom. *Sāpientiā, ae, f.*

Wise. *Sāpiens, sāpientis.*

With. *Cum*, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone.

See 414.

Word. *Verbūm, ī, n.* To keep one's word, *fidēm servāre.* See p. 74, note 4.

Would, would have. See *might, might have.*

Wound. *Vulnērē, arē, āvī, ātūm.*

Write. *Scribō, scribēre, scripsī, scriptūm.*

## Y.

Year. *Annūs, ī, m.*

You. *Tū, tuī.* See 184.

Your. *Tuūs, ā, ūm; vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm.*

Yourself. *Tū, tū ipsē.*

## Arnold's Latin Course :

---

### I. FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

Revised and carefully Corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo, 859 pages.

### II. PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. Re-

vised and carefully Corrected, by J. A. SPENCER, D.D. 12mo, 856 pages.

### III. CORNELIUS NEPOS. With Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in University of New York. New Edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, &c. 12mo, 850 pages.

---

Arnold's Classical Series has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, having been introduced into nearly all the leading educational institutions in the United States. The secret of this success is, that the author has hit upon the true system of teaching the ancient languages. He exhibits them not as dead, but as living tongues; and by imitation and repetition, the means which nature herself points out to the child learning his mother tongue, he familiarizes the student with the idioms employed by the elegant writers and speakers of antiquity.

The First and Second Latin Book should be put in the hands of the beginners, who will soon acquire from its pages a better idea of the language than could be gained by months of study according to the old system. The reason of this is, that every thing has a practical bearing, and a principle is no sooner learned than it is applied. The pupil is at once set to work on exercises.

The Prose Composition forms an excellent sequel to the above work, or may be used with any other course. It teaches the art of writing Latin more correctly and thoroughly, more easily and pleasantly, than any other work. In its pages Latin synonymes are carefully illustrated, differences of idioms noted, cautions as to common errors impressed on the mind, and every help afforded toward attaining a pure and flowing Latin style.

*From N. WHEELER, Principal of Worcester County High School.*

"In the skill with which he sets forth the *idiomatic peculiarities*, as well as in the directness and simplicity with which he states the facts of the ancient languages, Mr. Arnold has no superior. I know of no books so admirably adapted to awaken an *interest* in the study of the language, or so well fitted to lay the foundation of a correct scholarship and refined taste."

*From A. B. RUSSELL, Oakland High School.*

"The style in which the books are got up are not their only recommendation. With thorough instruction on the part of the teacher using these books as text-books, I am confident a much more ample return for the time and labor bestowed by our youth upon Latin must be secured. The time certainly has come when an advance must be made upon the old methods of instruction. I am glad to have a work that promises so many advantages as Arnold's First and Second Latin Book to beginners."

*From C. M. BLAKE, Classical Teacher, Philadelphia.*

"I am much pleased with Arnold's Latin Books. A class of my older boys have just finished the First and Second Book. They had studied Latin for a long time before, but never *understood* it, they say, as they do now."

## Arnold's First Latin Book ;

Remodelled and Rewritten, and adapted to the Ollendorff Method of Instruction. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M. 12mo, 302 pages.

Under the labors of the present author, the work of Arnold has undergone radical changes. It has been adapted to the Ollendorff improved method of instruction, and is superior to the former work in its plan and all the details of instruction. While it proceeds in common with Arnold on the principle of imitation and repetition, it pursues much more exactly and with a surer step the progressive method, and aims to make the pupil master of every individual subject before he proceeds to a new one, and of each subject by itself before it is combined with others ; so that he is brought gradually and surely to understand the most difficult combinations of the language. An important feature of this book is, that it carries along the Syntax *pari passu* with the Etymology, so that the student is not only all the while becoming familiar with the forms of the language, but is also learning to construct sentences and to understand the mutual relations of their component parts.

Special care has been taken in the exercises to present such idioms and expressions alone as are authorized by the best classic authors, so that the learner may acquire, by example as well as precept, a distinct idea of pure Latinity.

It has been a leading object with the author so to classify and arrange the various topics as to simplify the subject, and, as far as possible, to remove the disheartening difficulties too often encountered at the outset in the study of an ancient language.

*From W. E. TOLMAN, Instructor in Providence High School.*

"I have used Arnold's First Latin Book, remodelled and rewritten by Mr. Harkness, in my classes during the past year, and find it to be a work not so much remodelled and rewritten as one *entirely new*, both in its plan and in its adaptation to the wants of the beginner in Latin."

*From WM. RUSSELL, Editor of the First Series of the Boston Journal of Education.*

"The form which this work has taken under the skillful hand of Mr. H. is marked throughout by a method purely elementary, perfectly simple, gradually progressive, and rigorously exact. Pupils trained on such a manual cannot fail of becoming distinguished, in their subsequent progress, for precision and correctness of knowledge, and for rapid advancement in genuine scholarship."

*From GEORGE CAPRON, Principal of Worcester High School.*

"I have examined the work with care, and am happy to say that I find it superior to any similar work with which I am acquainted. I shall recommend it to my next class."

*From J. E. BOISE, Professor of Ancient Languages in Michigan University.*

"I have examined your First Book in Latin, and am exceedingly pleased both with the plan and execution. I shall not fail to use my influence toward introducing it into the classical schools of this State."



## Second Latin Book ;

Comprising an Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a Complete Analytical Syntax, in a series of Lessons and Exercises, involving the Construction, Analysis, and Reconstruction of Latin Sentences. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M., Senior Master in the Providence High School. 12mo, 362 pages.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear, and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons, which the student is required to translate, analyze, and reconstruct. He is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson, both by analysis and synthesis.

The careful study of this volume, on the plan recommended by the author, will greatly facilitate the pupil's progress in the higher departments of the language. Such is the testimony of the numerous institutions in which Harkness's improved edition of Arnold has been introduced.

*From J. A. SPENCER, D.D., late Professor of Latin in Burlington College, N. J.*

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, &c., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

*From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.*

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

"It seems to me to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skillfully formed exercises with systematic instruction."

*From J. J. OWEN, D.D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.*

"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the author's learning and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pennsylvania.*

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

## A Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges

By A. HARKNESS, PH.D., Professor in Brown University.

To explain the general plan of the work, the Publishers ask the attention of teachers to the following extracts from the Preface :

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language ; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully-selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself.

6. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

7. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive.

## Harkness's Latin Grammar.

*From Rev. Prof. J. J. OWEN, D.D., New York Free Academy.*

"I have carefully examined Harkness's Latin Grammar, and am so well pleased with its plan, arrangement, and execution, that I shall take the earliest opportunity of introducing it as a text-book in the Free Academy."

*From Mr. JOHN D. PHILBRICK, Superintendent of Public Schools, Boston, Mass.*

"This work is evidently no hasty performance, nor the compilation of a mere book-maker, but the well-ripened fruit of mature and accurate scholarship. It is eminently practical, because it is truly philosophical."

*From Mr. G. N. BIGELOW, Principal of State Normal School, Framingham, Mass.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar is the most satisfactory text-book I have ever used."

*From Rev. DANIEL LEACH, Superintendent Public Schools, Providence, R. I.*

"I am quite confident that it is superior to any Latin Grammar before the public. It has recently been introduced into the High School, and all are much pleased with it."

*From Dr. J. B. CHAPIN, State Commissioner of Public Instruction in Rhode Island.*

"The vital principles of the language are clearly and beautifully exhibited. The work needs no one's commendation."

*From Mr. ABNER J. PHIPPS, Superintendent of Public Schools, Lowell, Mass.*

"The aim of the author seems to be fully realized in making this 'a useful Book, and as such I can cheerfully commend it. The clear and admirable manner in which the intricacies of the Subjunctive Mood are unfolded, is one of its marked features."

"The evidence of ripe scholarship and of familiarity with the latest works of German and English philologists is manifest throughout the book."

*From Dr. J. T. CHAMPLIN, President of Waterville College.*

"I like both the plan and the execution of the work very much. Its matter and manner are both admirable. I shall be greatly disappointed if it does not at once win the public favor."

*From Prof. A. S. PACKARD, Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar exhibits throughout the results of thorough scholarship. I shall recommend it in our next catalogue."

*From Prof. J. J. STANTON, Bates College.*

"We have introduced Harkness's Grammar into this Institution. It is much more logical and concise than any of its rivals."

*From Mr. WM. J. ROLFE, Principal Cambridge High School.*

"Notwithstanding all the inconveniences that must attend a change of Latin Grammars in a large school like mine, I shall endeavor to secure the adoption of Harkness's Grammar in place of our present text-book as soon as possible."

*From Mr. L. R. WILLISTON, Principal Ladies' Seminary, Cambridge, Mass.*

"I think this work a decided advance upon the Grammar now in use."

*From Mr. D. B. HAGER, Prins. Elliot High School, Jamaica Plain, Mass.*

"This is, in my opinion, by far the best Latin Grammar ever published. It is admirably adapted to the use of learners, being remarkably concise, clear, comprehensive and philosophical. It will henceforth be used as a text-book in this school."

## Harkness's Latin Grammar.

*From Prof. C. S. HARRINGTON and Prof. J. C. VAN BENSCHOTEN, of the Wesleyan University.*

"This work is clear, accurate, and happy in its statement of principles, is simple yet scholarly, and embraces the latest researches in this department of philological science. It will appear in our catalogue."

*From Mr. ELBRIDGE SMITH, Principal Free Academy, Norwich, Ct.*

"This is not only the best Latin Grammar, but one of the most thoroughly prepared school-books that I have ever seen. I have introduced the book into the Free Academy, and am much pleased with the results of a month's experience in the class-room."

*From Mr. H. A. PRATT, Principal High School, Hartford, Ct.*

"I can heartily recommend Harkness's new work to both teachers and scholars. It is, in my judgment, the best Latin Grammar ever offered to our schools."

*From Mr. I. F. CADY, Principal High School, Warren, R. I.*

"The longer I use Harkness's Grammar the more fully am I convinced of its superior excellence. Its merits must secure its adoption wherever it becomes known."

*From Messrs. S. THURBER and T. B. STOCKWELL, Public High School, Providence.*

"An experience of several weeks with Harkness's Latin Grammar, enables us to say with confidence, that it is an improvement on our former text-book."

*From Mr. C. B. GOFF, Principal Boys' Classical High School, Providence, R. I.*

"The practical working of Harkness's Grammar is gratifying even beyond my expectations."

*From Rev. Prof. M. H. BUCKHAM, University of Vermont.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar seems to me to supply the desideratum. It is philosophical in its method, and yet simple and clear in its statements; and this, in my judgment, is the highest encomium which can be bestowed on a text-book."

*From Mr. E. T. QUIMBY, Appleton Academy, New Ipswich, N. H.*

"I think the book much superior to any other I have seen. I should be glad to introduce it at once."

*From Mr. H. OROUTT, Glenwood Ladies' Seminary, W. Brattleboro', Vt.*

"I am pleased with Harkness's Latin Grammar, and have already introduced it into this seminary."

*From Mr. CHARLES JEWETT, Principal of Franklin Academy.*

"I deem it an admirable work, and think it will supersede all others now in use in the division and arrangement of topics, and in its mechanical execution, it is superior to any Latin Grammar extant."

*From Mr. C. C. CHASE, Principal of Lowell High School.*

"Prof. Harkness's Grammar is, in my opinion, admirably adapted to make the study of the Latin language agreeable and interesting."

*From Mr. J. KIMBALL, High School, Dorchester, Mass.*

"It meets my ideal of what is desirable in every grammar, to wit: compression of general principles in terse definitions and statements, for ready use; and fulness of detail, well arranged for reference."

## **HARKNESS'S LATIN GRAMMAR.**

**12mo, 355 pages.**

Although this work has been published only a few weeks, it is recommended by and introduced into a large number of Colleges and Classical Schools, among which are the following:

BOWDOIN COLLEGE, Brunswick, Me.  
BATES' COLLEGE, Lewiston, Maine.  
LEWISTON FALLS ACADEMY, Auburn, Me.  
DOVER HIGH SCHOOL, Dover, N. H.  
DARTMOUTH COLLEGE.  
NORWICH UNIVERSITY, Norwich, Vt.  
GLENWOOD LADIES' SEMINARY, Brattleboro, Vt.  
AMHERST COLLEGE, Amherst, Mass.  
TUFTS COLLEGE, Medford, Mass.  
PHILLIPS' ACADEMY, Andover, Mass.  
STATE NORMAL SCHOOL, Framingham, Mass.  
HIGHLAND SCHOOL, Worcester, Mass.  
NEWTON HIGH SCHOOL, Newton, Mass.  
PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL, Springfield, Mass.  
ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL, Roxbury, Mass.  
LAWRENCE ACADEMY, Groton, Mass.  
AUBURNDALE FEMALE SEMINARY, Auburndale, Mass.  
SPENCER ACADEMY, Spencer, Mass.  
JAMAICA PLAIN HIGH SCHOOL, Jamaica Plain, Mass.  
BROWN UNIVERSITY, Providence, R. I.  
UNIVERSITY GRAMMAR SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.  
PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.  
FRIENDS' BOARDING SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.  
WARREN HIGH SCHOOL, Warren, R. I.  
PROVIDENCE CONFERENCE SEMINARY, East Greenwich, R. I.  
WESLEYAN UNIVERSITY, Middletown, Ct.  
FREE ACADEMY, Norwich, Ct.  
NEW LONDON ACADEMY, New London, Ct.  
YALE COLLEGE, New Haven, Ct.  
ROCHESTER UNIVERSITY, Rochester, N. Y.  
MADISON UNIVERSITY, Hamilton, N. Y.  
NEW YORK FREE ACADEMY, New York.  
CORTLAND ACADEMY, Homer, N. Y.  
OSWEGO HIGH SCHOOL, Oswego, N. Y.  
HAMILTON COLLEGE, Clinton, N. Y.  
HOBERT'S FREE COLLEGE, Geneva, N. Y.  
CANANDAIGUA ACADEMY, Canandaigua, N. Y.  
NEWTON HIGH SCHOOL, Newton, N. J.  
HAVERFORD COLLEGE, West Haverford, Pa.  
CLASSICAL AND MILITARY SCHOOL, Columbia, Pa.  
SHURTLEFF COLLEGE, Upper Alton, Ill.  
IOWA STATE UNIVERSITY, Iowa City, Iowa.  
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, Ann Arbor, Michigan.

## Germania and Agricola of Caius Cornelius Tacitus :

With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College. 12mo, 193 pages.

Tacitus's account of Germany and life of Agricola are among the most fascinating and instructive Latin classics. The present edition has been prepared expressly for college classes, by one who knows what they need. In it will be found: 1. A Latin text, approved by all the more recent editors. 2. A copious illustration of the grammatical constructions, as well as of the rhetorical and poetical usages peculiar to Tacitus. In a writer so concise it has been deemed necessary to pay particular regard to the connection of thought, and to the particles as the hinges of that connection. 3. Constant comparisons of the writer with the authors of the Augustan age, for the purpose of indicating the changes which had already been wrought in the language of the Roman people. 4. An embodiment in small compass of the most valuable labors of such recent German critics as Grimm, Günther, Gruber, Kiessling, Dronke, Roth, Ruperti, and Walther.

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

"I have found the book in daily use with my class of very great service, very practical, and well suited to the wants of students. I am very much pleased with the *Life of Tacitus* and the Introduction, and indeed with the literary character of the book throughout. We shall make the book a part of our Latin course."

## The History of Tacitus

By W. S. TYLER. With Notes for Colleges. 12mo, 453 pages.

The text of Tacitus is here presented in a form as correct as a comparison of the best editions can make it. Notes are appended for the student's use, which contain not only the grammatical, but likewise all the geographical, archaeological, and historical illustrations that are necessary to render the author intelligible. It has been the constant aim of the editor to carry students beyond the dry details of grammar and lexicography, and introduce them to a familiar acquaintance and lively sympathy with the author and his times. Indexes to the notes, and to the names of persons and places, render reference easy.

*From PROF. HACKETT of Newton Theological Seminary.*

"The notes appear to me to be even more neat and elegant than those on the *Germania and Agricola*. They come as near to such notes as I would be glad to write myself on a classic, as almost any thing that I have yet seen."









*STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.*

**Arnold's Greek Reading Book**, containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

**Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition.** Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Prof. of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

**Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar.** By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 208 pages.

**First Lessons in Greek;** \* or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.

**Hadley's Greek Grammar,\*** for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.

———— **Elements of the Greek Grammar.** 12mo.

**Herodotus, Selections from;** comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D., 12mo. 185 pages.

**Homer's Iliad,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes, by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 740 pages.

———— **Odyssey,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.

**Kuhner's Greek Grammar.** Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo 620 pages.

**Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.\*** Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Prof. of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 371 pages.

**Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis.** A new and enlarged edition, with numerous references to Kuhner's, Crosby's, and Hadley's Grammars. 12mo.

———— **Homer's Iliad.** 12mo. 750 pages.

———— **Greek Reader.** 12mo.

———— **Acts of the Apostles,** in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.

———— **Homer's Odyssey.** Tenth Edition. 12mo.

———— **Thucydides.** With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.

———— **Xenophon's Cyropædia.** Eighth Edition. 12mo.

**Plato's Apology and Crito.\*** With Notes by W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

**Thucydides's History of the Peloponnesian War**, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. With Map. 12mo.

**Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates**. With Notes and Introduction by R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Language in Middlebury College. 12mo. 421 pages.

———— **Anabasis**. With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 393 pages.

———— **Anabasis**. Chiefly according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Revised Edition. With Map. 12mo.

———— **Cyclopædia**, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. 12mo.

**Sophocles's Œdipus Tyrannus**. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By HOWARD CROSBY, Professor of Greek in the University of New York. 12mo. 138 pages.

HEBREW AND SYRIAC.

**Gesenius's Hebrew Grammar**. Seventeenth Edition, with Corrections and Additions, by Dr. E. RODIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Rochester Theological Seminary, New York. 8vo. 361 pages.

**Uhlemann's Syriac Grammar**. Translated from the German. By ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, and a Crestomathy and brief Lexicon prepared by the Translator. 8vo. 367 pages.

D. APPLETON & CO., 90, 92 & 94 Grand Street, N. Y.,

PUBLISH UPWARD OF

300 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,

Including the Departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE

*Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.*

A single copy for *examination*, of any of the works marked thus \*, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any Teacher remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, *postage prepaid*, upon receipt of full retail price.

